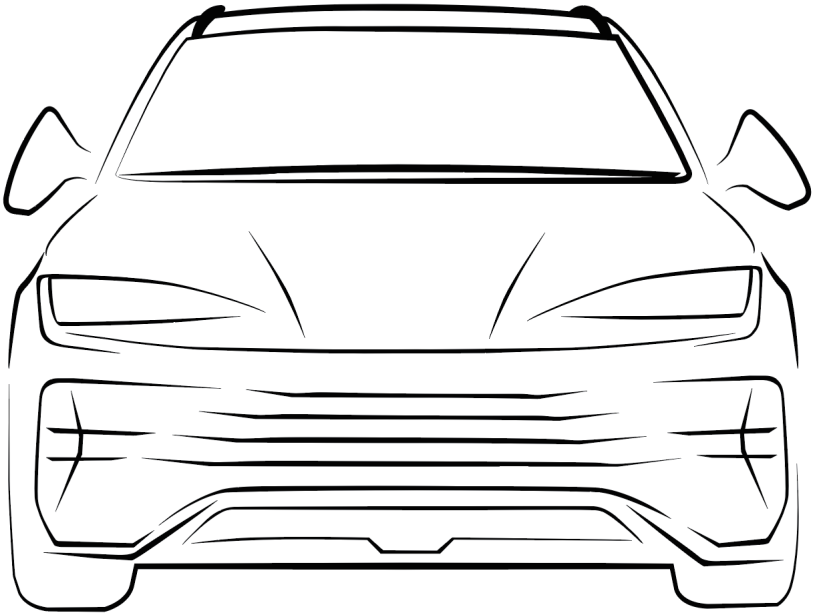
# BYD SEAL U DM-i

OWNER'S MANUAL



# Foreword

Thank you for choosing a BYD vehicle. Please read this manual carefully for proper use and maintenance.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Co., Ltd. recommends that you select genuine spare parts and properly use, maintain and repair the vehicle according to the requirements on this manual. Replacing any parts of the vehicle with non-genuine parts or modifying it will affect the performance of the vehicle, especially the safety and durability. All damages and performance problems of the vehicle arising from this are not covered by the warranty. Furthermore, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws, regulations and local governmental regulations.

Thank you for choosing BYD passenger vehicles and for your valuable comments and suggestions. To ensure better service for you, please provide accurate contact information. If the contact information is changed, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in time to update the information in the system. At the same time, please pay attention to your country's relevant laws and regulations and local policies in time, and licence your vehicle as soon as possible, otherwise there may be a risk of being unable to licence your vehicle.

Descriptions marked with the "*" symbol and interfaces of PAD in this manual apply to some models only. The pictures used in this manual are only taken from one version of these models, and the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "REMINDER", "CAUTION" and "WARNING" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. The hint types are defined as follows:

**REMINDER**

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

**CAUTION**

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

**WARNING**

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

**Contact Us**

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship centre.

E-mail: Bydautoservice@byd.com

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

**Copyright © BYD Auto Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.**

**No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written consent of BYD Auto Co., Ltd.**

**All rights reserved**

## Illustration Index

**Exterior.....7**

**Dashboard..... 9**

**Interior..... 10**

**Doors..... 11**

## Safety

**Seat Belts.....14**

Seat Belt Overview..... 14

Using Seat Belts.....14

**Airbags..... 17**

Introduction to Airbags.....17

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags..... 18

Front side airbags.....18

Side Curtain Airbags*..... 19

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions.....19

**Child Restraint Systems..... 24**

Children Restraint System..... 24

Child Safety.....24

**Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....30**

Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System..... 30

Working Modes Selection of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....35

Precautions for Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....39

**Anti-theft Alarm system.....41**

Anti-theft Alarm system..... 41

**Event Data Recorder System..... 42**

Data Collection and Processing.....42

## Instrument Cluster

**Instrument Cluster..... 50**

Instrument Cluster View.....50

Instrument Cluster Indicators.....51

## Controller Operation

**Doors and Keys.....62**

Keys.....62

Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 66

Smart Access and Start System..... 73

Child Protection Lock.....74

**Seats.....75**

Seat Precautions..... 75

Adjusting Front Seats..... 76

Folding Rear Seats.....77

Rear Seat Head Supports..... 78

**Steering Wheel..... 79**

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....79

**Switches..... 79**

Light Switches..... 79

Wiper Switch.....82

Driver's Door Switches..... 83

Milometer Toggle.....85

Headlight Adjustment..... 86

Hazard Warning Light.....86

Steering Wheel Switches.....87

Sunroof Switch*.....89

Interior Lights..... 91

E-Call Switch.....92

Passenger Airbag (PAB) Switch*..... 92

## Using and Driving

**Charging/Discharging Instructions.... 96**

Charging Instructions.....96
Charging.....99
Charge Port Anti-theft Lock..... 105
SOC Function.....106
Discharging Instructions..... 108
**Battery.....110**
High-Voltage Battery..... 110
Low-voltage Battery (12V).....112
**Usage Guidelines..... 114**
Break-in Period.....114
Trailer Towing.....114
Fuel..... 122
Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....124
Carrying Luggage..... 125
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....126
Wading into Water.....126
Fire Prevention.....127
**Starting and Driving.....129**
Starting the Vehicle..... 129
Driving.....129
Remote Start Function*.....131
Gearshift control panel..... 131
Electric Parking Brake (EPB)..... 132
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....135
Key Points for Driving.....136
**Driver Assistance..... 138**
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 138
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*..... 143
Predictive Emergency Braking (PEB)*.. 145
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) & Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB).....148
High Beam Assist System(HMA)*..... 149
Lane Departure Assist (LDA) System*...150
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist(ELKA)*..... 152
Blind Spot Assist System.....154
Traffic Sign Recognition System*.....156
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*..... 157
Driver Attention Warning system.....158
Child Presence Detection (CPD).....159
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)*..... 160
Panoramic View System*..... 160
Parking Assist System*.....166
Interior Motion Sensor System..... 170
Tyre Pressure Monitoring.....170
Head-up Display (HUD)*..... 172
Driving Safety Systems.....173
**Other Main Functions.....176**
Interior Rearview Mirror.....176
Power Side Mirrors..... 177
Wipers..... 178
Snow Chains..... 179

## In-Vehicle Devices

**Infotainment System..... 182**
Infotainment Button..... 182
**BYD App..... 184**
BYD APP..... 184
Account Registration..... 185
Vehicle Condition and Control.....185
Individual Centre and Vehicle Management.....186
**A/C System..... 186**
A/C ON/OFF.....186
A/C Operation Interface..... 187
Function Definition..... 188

Vents..... 191
Air Purification System*..... 192
A/C Settings..... 193
**Storage Device.....193**
Door Bins..... 193
Glove Box..... 193
Bill Box..... 194
Centre Console Cubby.....194
Cup Holder.....194
Seatback Pockets..... 195
Glasses Case..... 195
**Other Devices..... 195**
Sun Visor.....195
Vanity Mirror*..... 196
Grab Handles.....196
12V Auxiliary Power.....196
Front-Row USB Ports.....196
Rear ports..... 197
SD Card Slot*..... 197
Cargo Cover..... 197
Smartphone Wireless Charging Position*..... 197
Boot Cover Board..... 199
Safety Hammer.....199

## Maintenance

**Maintenance Information.....202**
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....202
**Regular Maintenance..... 205**
Regular Maintenance..... 205
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 205
Paintwork Maintenance..... 206
Exterior Cleaning..... 207
Interior Cleaning.....208
**Self-Maintenance.....210**
Self-Maintenance..... 210
Sunroof Maintenance.....211
Vehicle Storage.....212
Bonnet..... 213
Cooling System.....213
Washer..... 214
Braking System.....215
Engine Oil.....215
A/C System.....216
Wiper Blades.....216
Tyres Maintenance..... 217
Fuses..... 220

## When Faults Occur

**When Faults Occur..... 232**
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted.....232
If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on... 232
Engine Flameout During Driving..... 233
If the Engine is Overheated.....233
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....234
If a Tyre Goes Flat..... 236

## Specifications

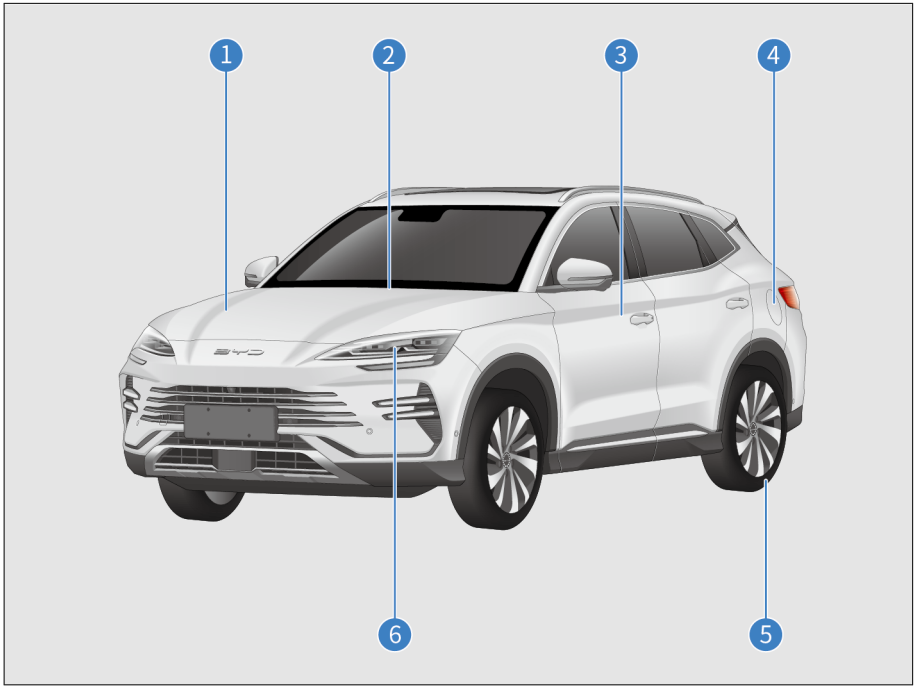
**Data Information..... 242**
Vehicle Parameter..... 242
**Tips.....247**
Vehicle Identification..... 247
Warning Labels.....248
Transponder Mounting Position.....250
Declarations of Conformity.....251

## Abbreviation List

**Abbreviations..... 261**

# Illustration Index

## Exterior





1 Bonnet ***P213***

Cooling System ***P213***

Washer ***P214***

Brake Fluid ***P215***

Front Compartment Fuse Box ***P221***

2 Front Wiper ***P178***

3 Doors ***P66***

Locking/Unlocking Doors ***P66***

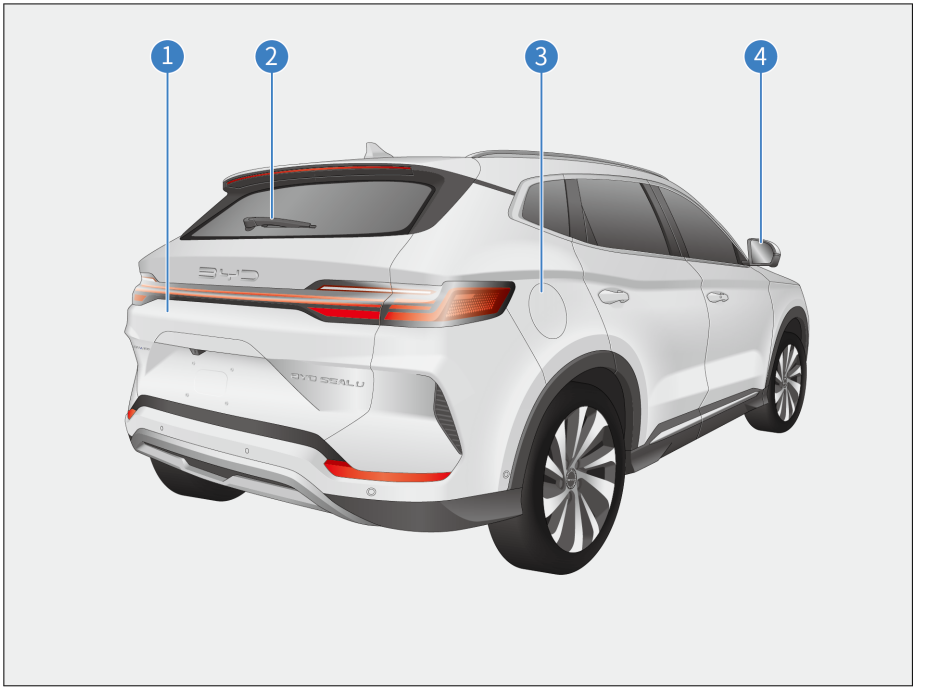
4 Refueling Cover ***P122***

Refueling ***P122***

5 Tyre ***P217***

If a Tyre Goes Flat ***P236***

6 Lights ***P211***



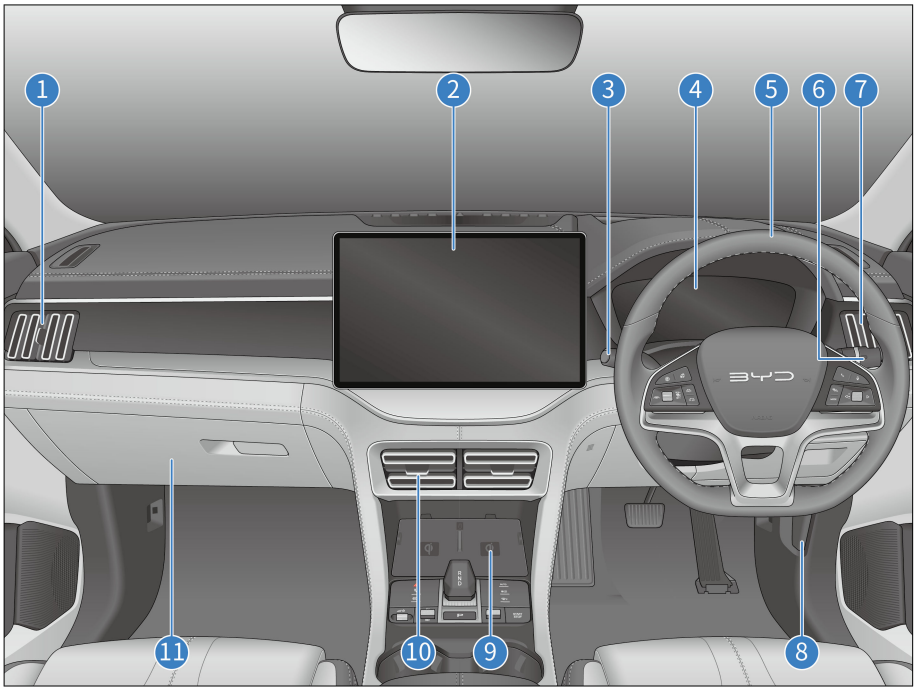

1 Boot ***P69***

2 Rear Wiper ***P178***

3 Charging Port Cover ***P100***

4 Electric external rearview mirrors ***P177***

# Dashboard




1 Front Side Vent ***P191***

2 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P182***

3 Light Switches ***P79***

4 Instrument Cluster ***P50***

5 Steering Wheel ***P79***

Adjusting the Steering Wheel ***P79***

Steering Wheel Switch Group ***P87***

6 Wiper Switch ***P82***

7 Front Side Vent ***P191***

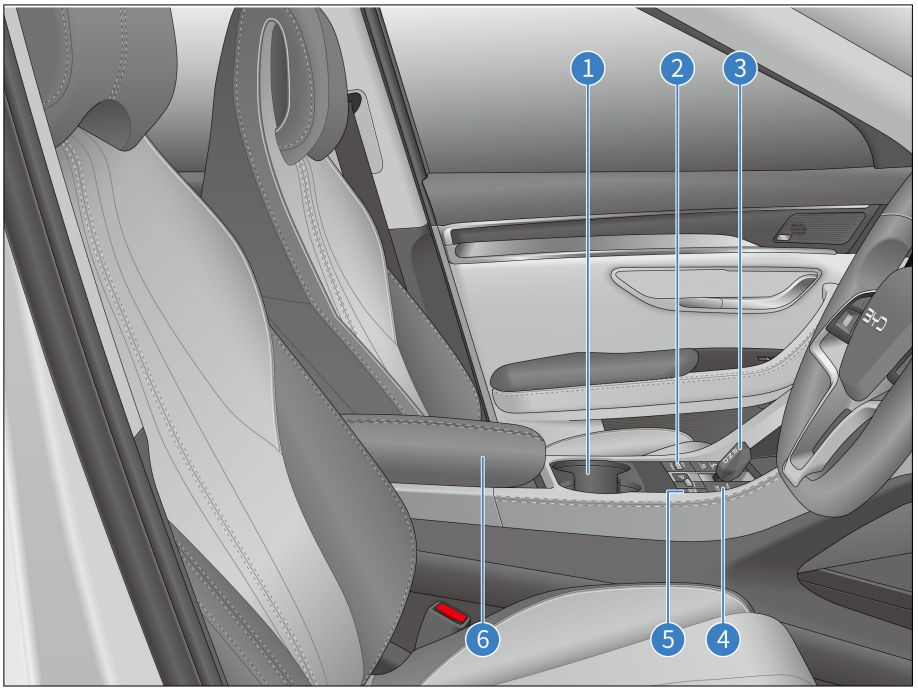
8 Bonnet Handle ***P213***

9 Wireless Phone Charging Location ***P197***

10 Front Centre Vent ***P191***

11 Glove Box ***P193***

# Interior




1 Front Seat Cup Holder ***P194***

2 Switches

ESC Switch* ***P173***

BSD System Switch ***P154***

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)* ***P150***

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Switch* ***P135***

3 Gearshift control panel ***P131***

4 A/C ON/OFF ***P186***

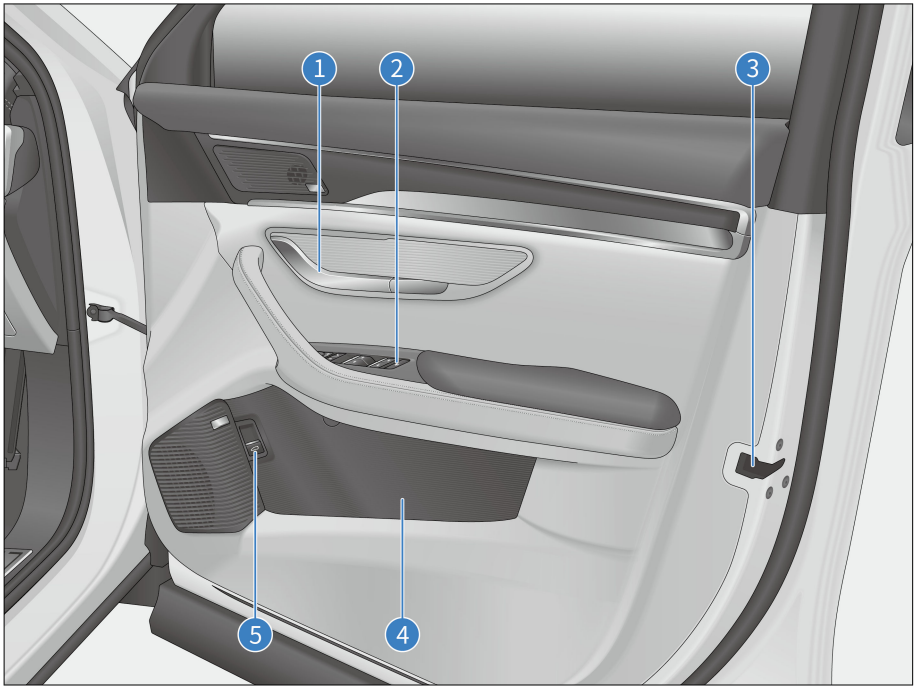
5 Mode Switch Set ***P35***

6 Centre Console Cubby ***P194***

7 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P86***

8 Seats ***P75***

Power front seat adjustment ***P76***




1 Interior door handle ***P67***

2 Front Left Door Switch ***P83***

Power Window Switches ***P83***

Window Lock Button ***P84***

Central Door Lock ***P85***

Side Mirror Adjustment Switch ***P85***

3 Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key ***P72***

4 Door Bins ***P193***

5 Interior Boot Lid Button ***P69***

# 01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 14
Airbags..... 17
Child Restraint Systems..... 24
Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....30
Anti-theft Alarm system.....41
Event Data Recorder System.....42

# Seat Belts

## Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Please read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

**CAUTION**

- Always have the seat belts fastened while the vehicle is in motion.
- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts on the vehicle are mainly designed according to the body size of adults, and are not suitable for children. Please select an appropriate child safety seat according to the age and body size of children. (Refer to the Child Safety Seats in this chapter)
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- BYD has highly emphasised that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle. Failure to do so increases the risk of injury in case of an accident.
- It is recommended that children be seated in rear seats and always use seat belts and suitable child restraints. In emergency braking or collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to ride on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

**Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)**

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to fast retraction, allow it to retract for a distance of 15mm and slowly pull it back.

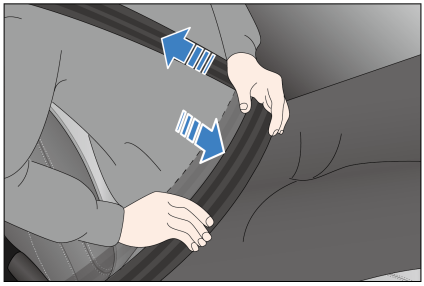
**Pretensioner and Force Limiter***

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

## Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle. (see "Electrical Front Seat Adjustment".)
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

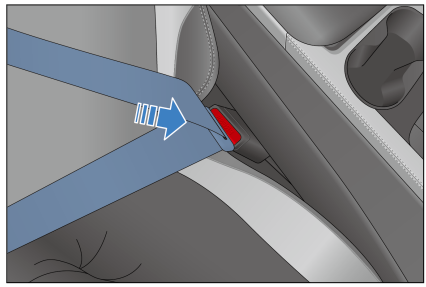
- Keep the correct sitting posture and pull out the shoulder belt diagonally across the entire shoulder without contacting the neck or falling from the shoulder. Position the lap belt as low as possible around the hip.



**CAUTION**

- The shoulder belt should cross the centre of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible across the hip to prevent any injury caused by pressing against the abdomen in case of an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

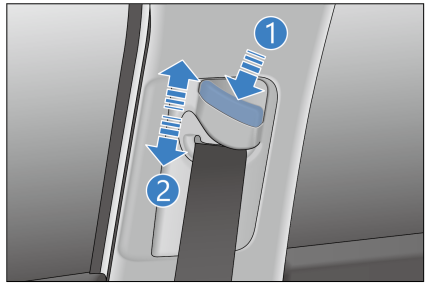
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. The height of the front seat belts can be adjusted for optimum comfort and protection.

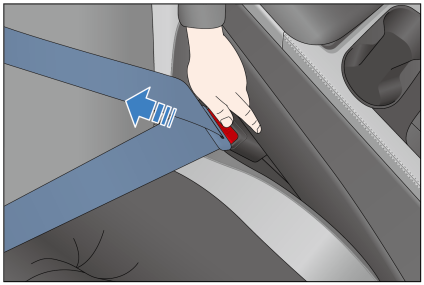
① Press the adjuster release button.

② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.




5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.
6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts. If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



**REMINDER**

- For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should remind occupants to wear seat belts properly.
- The driver should ensure that all occupants are wearing seat belts before driving the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid travelling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or itsspring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

**CAUTION**

- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts without permission.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. If the preloading function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.
- In the event of a severe accident, regardless of whether the seat belt has an apparent damage, replace it together with the seat assembly, and thoroughly check the airbag system.
- Pregnant women should also fasten their seat belt properly. Particularly, be sure to position the lap belt as low across the hip as possible, to prevent serious injury.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.
- Please use the seat belt correctly, do not insert the seat belt empty, otherwise the seat belt can not play a protective role or even damage the seat belt.
-

**Seat Belt Reminders**

If any vehicle occupant fails to fasten his/her seat belt after the vehicle is started, a visual and sound alarm will go off until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Unfastened seat belt indicator
  - This indicator flashes if any seat belt is not fastened.
- Display of unfastened belt’ s seat

- The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up and is steady on in case of abnormal conditions in the vehicle.

- Seat belt reminder for front passenger
  - When the vehicle is powered on, if the driver or the front passenger does not fasten the seat belt, the main seat belt reminder indicator and the reminder indicator for the corresponding seat lights up; if the seat belt is still not fastened when the vehicle is running, the seat belt reminder indicator stays on and there is a warning sound.
- Seat belt reminder for rear passengers*
  - With the ignition switch on ON, if any rear-row seat belt is not fastened, the unfastened seat belt indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up. While the vehicle is in motion and occupants have not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator is on and audible alarm is given.
- When the driver and all passengers have fastened their seat belts, the main unfastened seat belt warning light and all warning lights for corresponding seats go out.

**REMINDER**

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.

# Airbags

## Introduction to Airbags

- The airbag system, a part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS), is designed to supplement the seats and seat belts. When SRS deployment conditions are met in a serious collision accident, the airbag system deploys quickly to protect heads and chests of both drivers and passengers together with seat belts, thus reducing the severity of injuries.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximise protection.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while the side airbags include front seat side airbags and side curtain airbags.

**REMINDER**

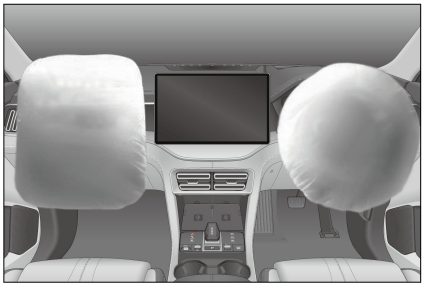
- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximise the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components without authorisation.
- Non-BYD genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury. Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.

**REMINDER**

- After a collision, although the airbag module is not deployed and the pre-tensioner seat belt is not locked, the airbag computer may be encrypted to protect the passengers from high voltage. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

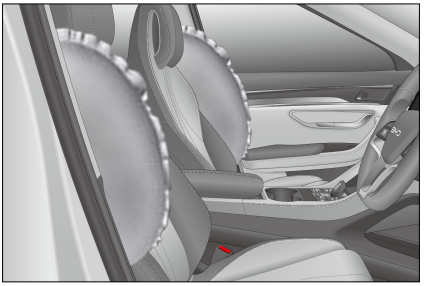
## Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The vehicle is equipped with driver airbags and front passenger airbags. When the airbag system electronic control unit (ECU) detects a moderate to severe frontal impact during driving, the airbag deploys to assist in protecting the heads and chests of the driver and the front passenger to reduce the severity of injury to the driver and the front passenger.



## Front side airbags

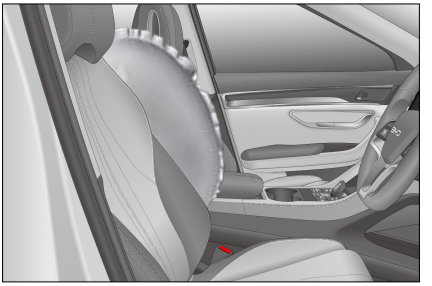
If the model is equipped with one side airbag for the front left seat and one for the front right seat, (as shown in the figure) the airbag is mounted on the outside of each front seat backrest where the word "AIRBAG" is marked.



- When a moderate to severe side impact is detected during vehicle travel and the triggering conditions are met, the side airbag deploys to protect the occupant's chest.
- Generally, only the airbag on the impacted side deploys in the event of a side impact.
- If the impact occurs on the passenger side, the airbag on the passenger side deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

**Front Far Side Airbag**

- The vehicle is equipped with the front centre airbag (installed in the inner edge of the driver seat and marked "AIRBAG", as shown):



**In a vehicle equipped with seat side airbags:**

1. Prevent the seatbacks from getting wet. If they get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.
2. Do not cover or replace seatback covers on you own. Unsuitable seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment.

## Side Curtain Airbags*

- If the model is equipped with left and right side airbags(as shown in the figure airbags are installed at the connection between the side wall and the roof, and the words "Curtain Airbag" are marked on the A-pillar shield, B-pillar shield, and C-pillar shield), When a moderate to severe side impact is detected during vehicle travel and the triggering conditions are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupant on the side of collision.



- Generally, only the airbag on the impacted side deploys in the event of a side impact.
- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

## Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

**Airbag Triggering Conditions**

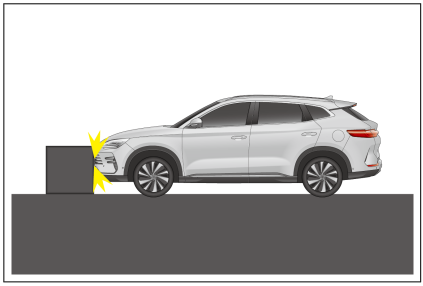
- Airbag triggering conditions: In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacles, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: During a collision, a comprehensive and intelligent comparison is made between the deceleration curve obtained by the Electronic Control Unit (ECU)and the set value. If the signal such as the deceleration curve generated and measured during the collision is below the preset reference value in the ECU, airbags do not deploy, even if the vehicle may have been severely deformed in an accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

**Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed**

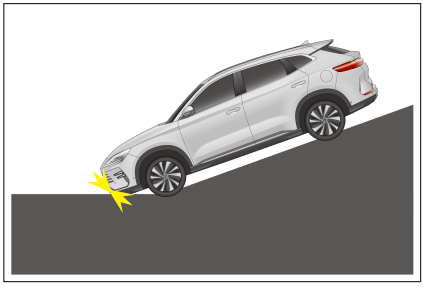
The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.



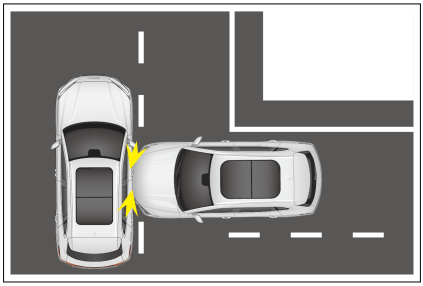
The vehicle hits a bump or kerbstone.



The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

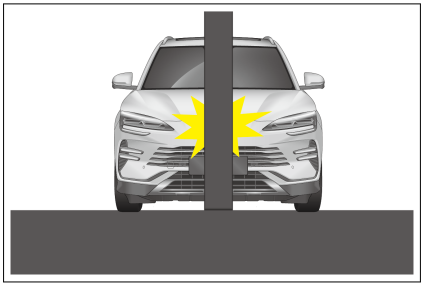


One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

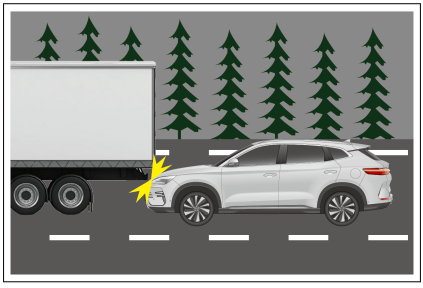


**Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed**

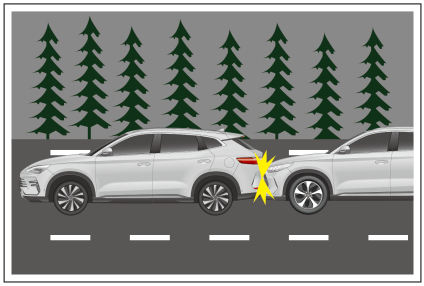
The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.



The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.



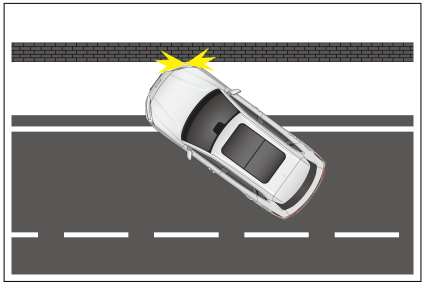
The vehicle tail is hit by another vehicle.



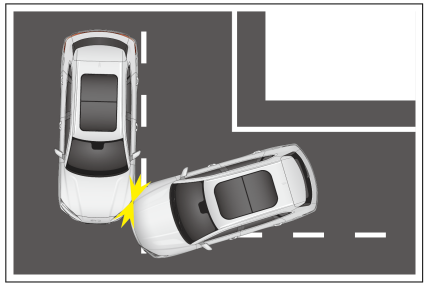
The vehicle rolls over.



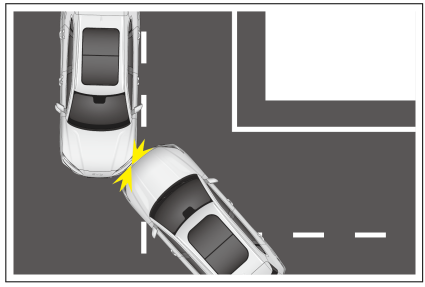
The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.



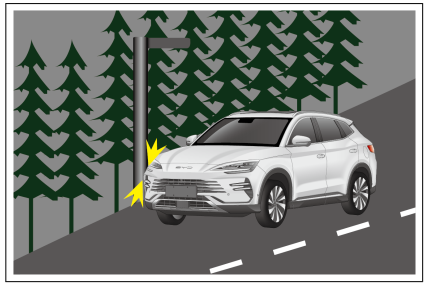
Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.



The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.



The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



**WARNING**

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any change to suspension, tyre size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other car models; doing so

**WARNING**

may lead to failure of the airbag system.

- The driver shall keep the distance between the chest and steering wheel at least 25 cm for the most effective protection when the system is triggered.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, if the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the hub cover of the steering wheel, the right side surface of the dashboard or the surface of A, B, and C pillar trims and seat side airbag. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion. Failure to do so could

**WARNING**

result in serious injury or even death.

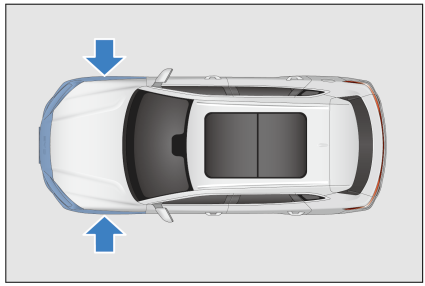
- Do not place other trims or articles within the action range of any side curtain airbag (e.g., windscreens, side door glass, A-pillar shields, roof, B-pillar shields, C-pillar shields and auxiliary handles). Otherwise, trims or objects will be thrown out due to the strong force released when side curtain airbags deploy, or will cause failure of side curtain airbags to deploy properly, resulting in serious or even life-threatening injuries.
- When transferring car ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**WARNING**

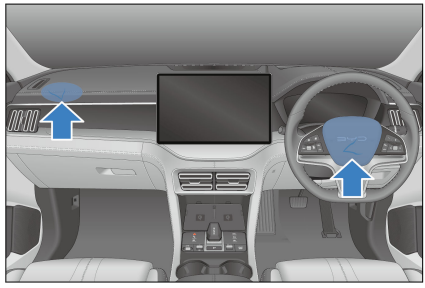
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of domestic common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to seamlessly match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

**It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.**

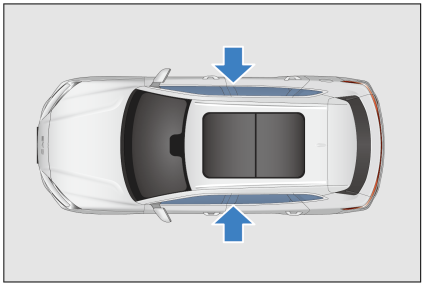
- The airbag has deployed.
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light lights up abnormally.
- Airbags do not deploy when the front part (shaded part in the figure) of the vehicle suffers a collision.



- The airbag cover has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.
- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.



- Side airbags and curtain airbags have deployed.
- An impact to a vehicle door (shaded part in the figure) in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.
- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.



# Child Restraint Systems

## Children Restraint System

Child restraint systems provide good protection to your child occupants in an accident. For the child's safety, please carefully read the instructions provided with the child restraint and in this manual before installing a child restraint.

**WARNING**

- Never carry a child on your lap in a vehicle journey.
- An appropriate child restraint system must be used for your child.
- Please follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual to make sure a child restraint it is properly installed in the vehicle.
- When the child restraint is removed from the seat, ensure it is stored safely.
- Failure to follow the advice given, or the instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer,

**WARNING**

can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Children should use an appropriate child restraint system, and it is recommended that children are seated on a rear outboard seat position. Children should sit comfortably and safely. Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the vehicle.

**Important considerations for selecting a child restraint system**

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system must be approved in accordance with either ECE R44 or ECE R129.

## Child Safety

It is recommended that children are seated on a rear outboard seat position, and according to the child seat installation instruction provided by the child seat manufacturer.

- Where possible, the child seat should be secured with the top tether strap.
- The backrest of the child seat must lay as flat as possible against the vehicle seat backrest.
- If required, adjust the seat backrest angle so that the child seat lies flat against the backrest.
- Once it has been installed, if the child seat is touching the head restraint and therefore cannot be positioned flat against the backrest, raise the head restraint all the way up, or remove it and stow safely in the vehicle.

For additional installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

**Installing Child Restraint Systems**

**Installation in the front passenger seat**

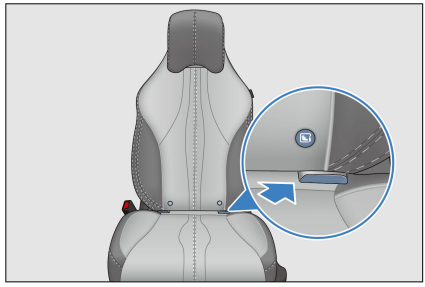
- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- When a forward-facing child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, ensure that the seat is positioned fully rearward away from the active airbag.
- If required:
  - Adjust the front passenger seat rearwards so that there is no contact between the child sitting in the front passenger seat and the vehicle interior.
  - Adjust the front passenger seatback so it has secure contact with the child restraint system.
- When using a rear-facing child seat, turn the PAB switch to OFF, to disable the front passenger seat airbag. For details, see ‘Passenger Airbag’ .




**WARNING**

- The passenger airbag switch must be turned to ON, immediately after the rear- facing child restraint system is removed from the front passenger seat, to enable the front passenger seat airbag.
- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat with the front passenger airbag activated.
- Failure to follow the advice given, or the instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer, can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.
- Front-facing passengers (children or adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat with the passenger airbag deactivated.
- When a forward facing child restraint system is used on the front passenger seat, ensure the seat is positioned fully rearward away from the active airbag.

- The front passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages. The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see the illustration) located on the seatback, directly above the associated anchorages.



- The front passenger seat is equipped with a top tether strap anchorage on the back.

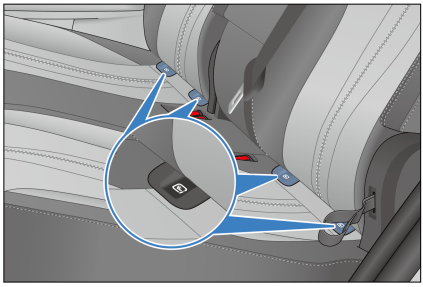


- When the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat with a top tether:
  - Route it through the aperture of the head restraint.

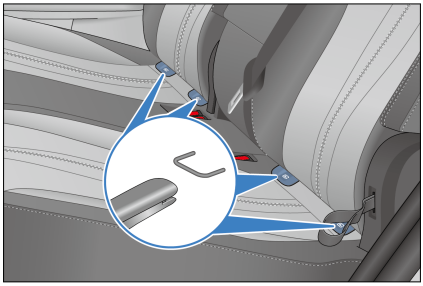


**Installation in the rear seat**

- The anchorage locations are identified by a marking (see the illustration) located on the seatback, directly above the associated anchorages.



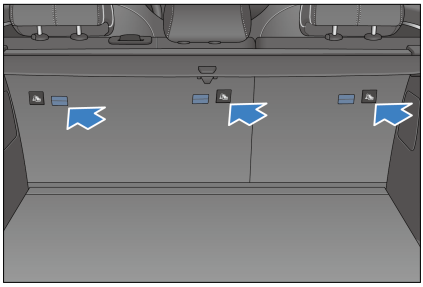
- The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages.



**CAUTION**

The anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.

- The rear seats are equipped with top tether strap anchorages on the back.



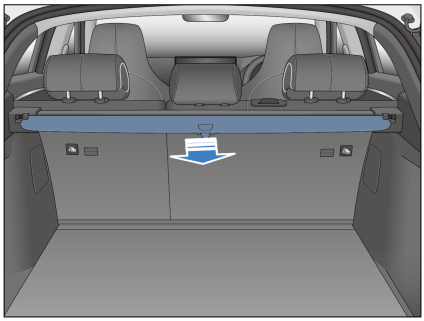
**CAUTION**

- When the child restraint is installed with a top tether on a rearoutboard seat, first remove the cargo cover, to have access to the top tether anchorage.

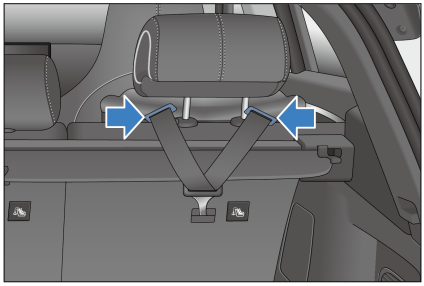
- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seat, The front seats can be adjusted forward, and the front seatback angle can be rotated, to ensure there is no contact of the front seats to the child.
- To ensure that the vehicle seatback can safely support the child restraint

system, the head restraint can be adjusted or removed.

- When the child restraint is installed on the rear outboard seat with a top tether:
  - Remove the cargo cover to have access to the top tether anchorage and store the cover safely in the vehicle, and;



  - Route it at the outside of each head restraint rod.



**WARNING**

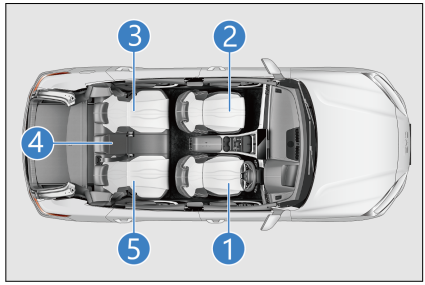
- When a child restraint is a booster cushion only, without a seatback,

**WARNING**

the head restraint must never be removed, and must be positioned at the appropriate height.

**Details on child restraint system installation locations:**

- ① Driver seat
- ② Front passenger seat
- ③ Rear left seat
- ④ Rear centre seat
- ⑤ Rear right seat




**CAUTION**

- The illustration indicates seat positions for a LHD model. For RHD model, the front seat reference positions are switched.

The following table shows the installation options for ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system at the ISOFIX or i-Size anchorage points of the individual vehicle seating locations.

| | Seating Position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | | |
| | 1 | Front Passenger Airbag Activated[a]) | Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a)] | 4[b)] | 5[b)] | 6[b)] |
| Seating position suitable for Universal belted | X | YES (Forward-facing only) | YES | YES | YES | YES |
| Seating position suitable for i-Size | X | YES (Forward-facing only) | YES | YES | YES | YES |
| Largest suitable Lateral child restraint system | X | NO | NO | NO | NO | NO |
| Largest suitable Rearward child restraint system | X | NO | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 | NO | R1 / R2X / R2 / R3 |
| Largest suitable Forward child restraint system | X | F2X / F2 / F3 | F2X / F2 / F3 | F2X / F2 / F3 | NO | F2X / F2 / F3 |
| Suitable for booster seat | X | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 | B2 / B3 |
| Suitable for support leg | X | YES | YES | YES | YES | YES |

[a)]: The front seat must be positioned fully rearward and fully down. The front seat belt upper anchorage should be adjusted to be fully down. If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the front seatback, the front seatback can be adjusted vertically and / or the head restraint adjusted or removed.

| | Seating Position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 3 | | | | |
| | 1 | Front Passenger Airbag Activated[a] ) | Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a)] | 4[b)] | 5[b)] | 6[b)] |

[b)]: If necessary, to ensure the child restraint system has direct contact to the rear seatback, the head restraint should be adjusted or removed.

X:Seat position not suitable for securing a child restraint system.

Recommended child restraint systems:
(Group and child stature according to ECE R129).

| Group | Child Stature (cm) | Manufacturer | Child Restraint System | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | < 83 | Maxi-Cosi | Pebble 360 | Belted |
| 0+/1 | 76-105 | Britax Römer | Trifix 2 i-Size | ISOFIX and belted |
| 2 | < 135 | Britax Römer | Kidfix i-Size [a)] | ISOFIX and belted |
| 3 | < 150 | Nania | Booster Basic | Belted |

[a)] Ensure:

- The lap belt is in the SecureGuard.
- The diagonal belt is not in the SecureGuard.
- The SICT element is installed correctly.

① Group 0

② Group 0+/1

③ Group 2

④ Group 3



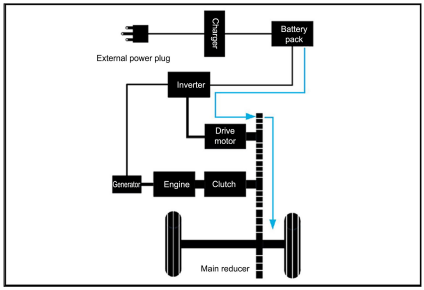

# Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

## Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

**Configuration 1 (2WD)**

**"EV" - Pure Electric Operating Mode:**

- In pure electric operating mode, the high-voltage battery provides electric energy to drive the vehicle by the electric motor, and this mode can meet a variety of operating conditions, such as starting, reversing, crawling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.

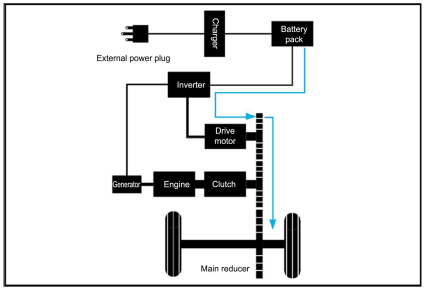



**REMINDER**

- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, high or low temperature, low SOC level or the need of engine maintenance. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are meeted. It is recommanded to choose HEV mode under high or low temperature conditions.

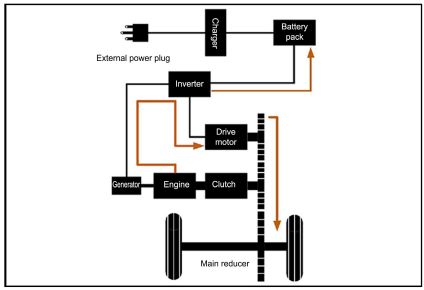
**"HEV" - Dual-Mode Synergy Operating Mode:**

- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is high or the power demand is low, the vehicle system prioritizes EV drive, without starting the engine.

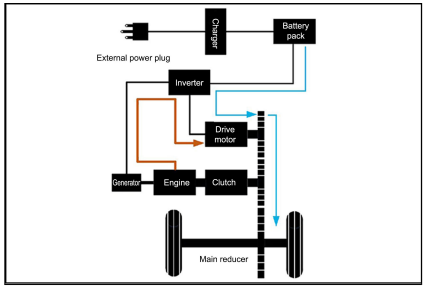



- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is low or the power demand is high, the engine starts and operates in series to meet the power demand.

- In HEV mode, the engine supplies power to the high-voltage battery and drive motor.

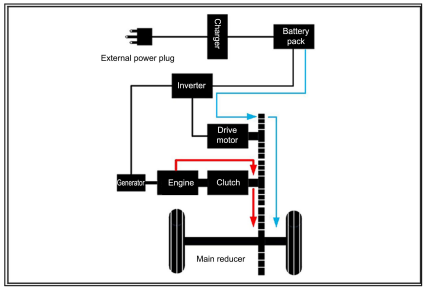



- In HEV mode, the engine and the high-voltage battery simultaneously supply power to the drive motor.

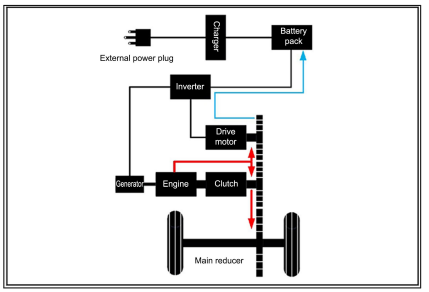



- In HEV mode, the engine starts to operate in parallel at medium and high speeds under some working conditions to improve fuel economy.

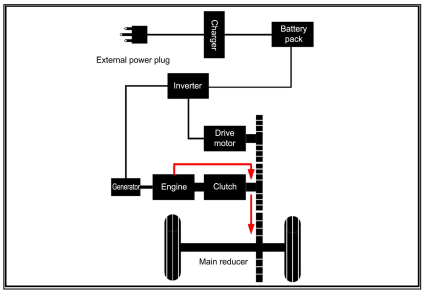
- In HEV mode, the engine and drive motor work together to drive the vehicle.



- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and simultaneously drives the motor to generate electricity for energy recycling.



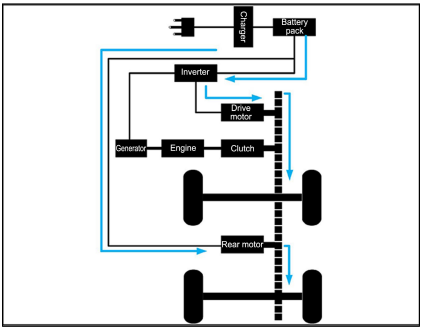

- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the drive motor rests.




**Configuration 2 (4WD)**

**"EV" - Pure Electric Operating Mode:**

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery provides electric energy to drive the vehicle by the electric motor, and this mode can meet a variety of operating conditions, such as starting, reversing, crawling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects pure electric 4WD mode or pure electric front-drive mode.

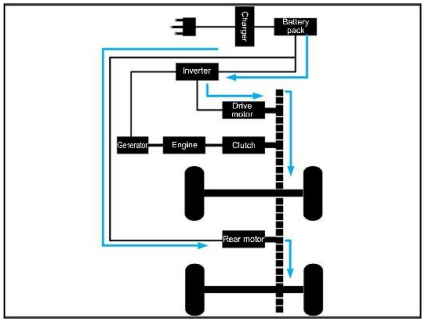



**REMINDER**

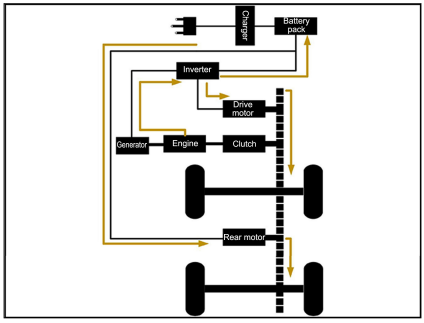
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, high or low temperature, low SOC level or the need of engine maintenance. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are meeted. It is recommanded to choose HEV mode under high or low temperature conditions.

**"HEV" - Dual-Mode Synergy Operating Mode:**

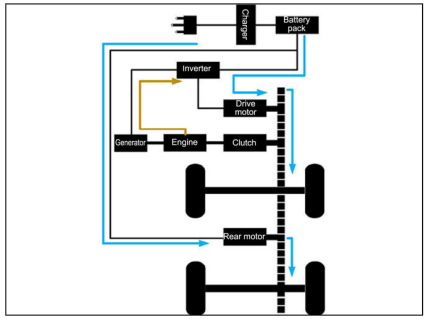
- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is high or the power demand is low, the vehicle system prioritizes EV drive, without starting the engine.
- In HEV mode, when the SOC level is low or the power demand is high, the engine starts and operates in series to meet the power demand.



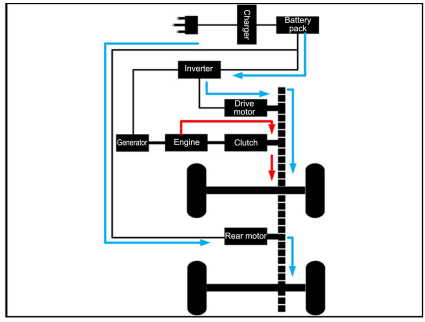

- In HEV mode, the engine supplies power to the high-voltage battery and drive motor. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects 4WD mode or front-drive mode.



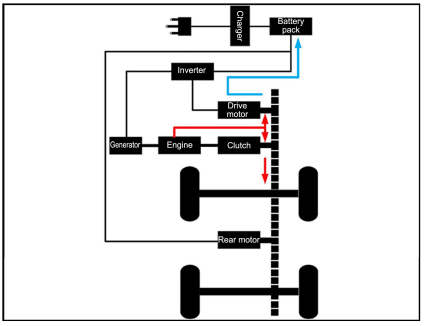

- In HEV mode, the engine and the high-voltage battery simultaneously supply power to the drive motor. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects 4WD mode in series or front-drive mode in series.



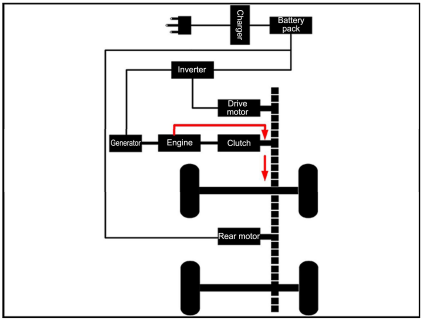

- In HEV mode, the engine starts to operate in parallel at medium and high speeds under some working conditions to improve fuel economy.
  - In HEV mode, the engine and drive motor work together to drive the vehicle. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects 4WD mode in parallel or front-drive mode in parallel.




- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and simultaneously drives the motor to generate electricity for energy recycling. According to the operating conditions, the vehicle system intelligently selects the front motor, rear motor, or both for power generation.




- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the drive motor rests.



# Working Modes Selection of Dual-Mode (DM) System

**Configuration 1 (2WD)**




① EV/HEV mode

- Pull the lever forward to trigger EV mode
- and backward to trigger HEV mode.

② MODE

- Toggle the "MODE" lever forward to switch between ECO→snow mode→SPORT→NORMAL→ECO.
- Pull the "MODE" lever backward to switch between ECO→NORMAL→SPORT→snow mode→ECO.

**EV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode to minimize power consumption.

**EV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to NORMAL mode to ensure ride comfort and control power consumption.

**EV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument

cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Sport (SPORT)mode to ensure the best power performance.

**HEV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode for the best fuel economy.

**HEV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Normal (NORMAL)mode to ensure ride comfort and fuel economy.

**HEV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV switch backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to SPORT mode to ensure the best power performance.

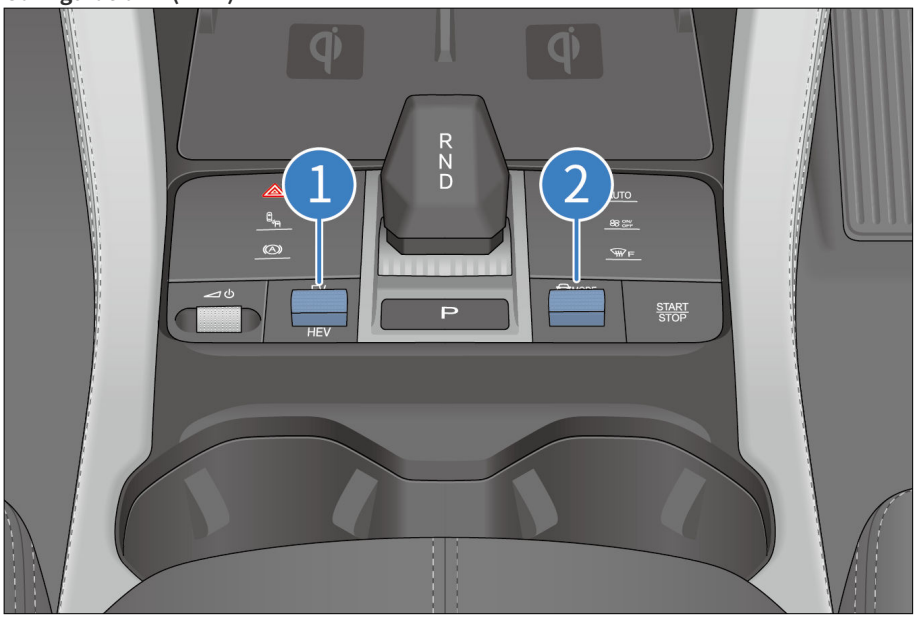
**MAX EV Drive Mode:**

- This mode ensures vehicle operation in EV mode only to the greatest extent. To switch the vehicle to the MAX EV mode with sufficient battery SOC, toggle the EV/HEV switch forward and hold for 3s until the EV indicator on the instrument cluster turns blue. At this time, the output power of the vehicle is limited to some extent. When the battery SOC drops to a lower level, the vehicle automatically switches to the HEV-ECO mode.

**Snow Mode**

- Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the Snow Mode indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Snow Mode to drive on the wet roads including snow roads.

**Configuration 2 (4WD)**




① EV/HEV mode

- Pull the lever forward to trigger EV mode
- and backward to trigger HEV mode.

② MODE

- Toggle the "MODE" lever forward to switch between ECO→mud/rut mode→sand mode→SPORT→NORMAL→ECO.
- Toggle the "MODE" lever backward to switch between ECO→NORMAL→SPORT→snow/ gravel/grassland mode→sand mode→mud/rut mode→ECO.

**EV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode to minimize power consumption.

**EV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to NORMAL mode to ensure ride comfort and control power consumption.

**EV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever forward, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the EV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Sport (SPORT)mode to ensure the best power performance.

**HEV-ECO Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the ECO indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to ECO mode for the best fuel economy.

**HEV-NORMAL Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the NORMAL indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Normal (NORMAL)mode to ensure ride comfort and fuel economy.

**HEV-SPORT Drive Mode:**

- Toggle the EV/HEV lever backward, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in the HEV mode. Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the SPORT indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to SPORT mode to ensure the best power performance.

**MAX EV Drive Mode:**

- This mode ensures vehicle operation in EV mode only to the greatest extent. To switch the vehicle to the MAX EV mode with sufficient battery SOC, toggle the EV/HEV switch forward and hold for 3s until the EV indicator on the instrument cluster turns blue. At this time, the output power of the vehicle is limited to some extent. When the battery SOC drops to a lower level, the vehicle automatically switches to the HEV-ECO mode.

**Sand Mode**

- Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the sand mode indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to sand mode.
  - This mode is recommended for soft, dry, and easily pressed ground. (Deserts, beaches, sand dunes, shorelines, etc.)
  - This mode is also recommended for driving on the surfaces of thick gravel.

**Snow/Gravel/Grass Mode**

- Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the Snow/Gravel/Grass Mode indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Snow/Gravel/Grass Mode.
  - This mode is recommended for firm roads covered with a layer of loose and slippery substances such as grass, snow, ice, or gravel.
  - To improve drivability, handling, and vehicle stability on slippery roads, avoid pressing hard the accelerator pedal frequently.

**Mud/Rut Mode**

- Toggle the MODE lever continuously until the Mud/Rut Mode indicator on the instrument cluster lights up. This indicates that the vehicle has switched to Mud/Rut Mode.
  - This mode is recommended for muddy, rutted, soft, or uneven road surfaces.

**CAUTION**

- If the vehicle is to pass an area of wet sand and the sand layer is thick enough to trap the wheel, the mud/rut mode should be selected.

**CAUTION**

- The sand mode is recommended for road with a thick gravel layer.
- If the vehicle performance decreases due to the activation of dynamic stability control in soft sand, snow/gravel/grassland conditions, turning off the ESC system is conducive to improving the vehicle performance. When the difficulty is overcome, the ESC system must be restarted Function.

## Precautions for Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

**When the vehicle operates in hybrid synergy mode, pay attention to the following:**

- The performance of the high-voltage battery degrades in high- and low-temperature environments. To prevent the high-voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is too high or too low, the vehicle system limits the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - When the temperature is lower than -30°C or higher than 60°C, the battery cannot be charged.
  - When the temperature is lower than -35°C or higher than 60°C, the battery cannot discharge.
- It is recommended to use the vehicle in an environment above -20°C. In the event of the above special circumstances, it is recommended to drive thevehicle by using the engine.
- The optimum temperature of the battery is 25°C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the output power of the battery is limited, so the driving range of the vehicle in pure electric mode is shortened.

**Attention to High-voltage and Hightemperature Components**

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

**WARNING**

- Do not touch the orange cable or the power battery electrode. Electric shock may cause serious or even life-threatening injuries.
- Please read all warning labels.

- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high temperatures during driving. These parts are attached warning labels. Please carefully read and follow the instructions on these warning labels.

**WARNING**

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In the event of collision, flooding, and other situations that may cause damage to the high-voltage system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible for inspection to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a

**WARNING**

BYD authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.

- Touching parts with high voltage causes electric shock, thus resulting in serious or even life-threatening injuries.

- For the vehicle is driven by petrol engine and motor, the engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powered on or off, it may hear the sound (sound of contactor closing or opening) from high-voltage components under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the indicator “ OK ” stays on, it indicates that the vehicle can be driven, even if the fuel engine is not started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the “P” button when parking. When “P” or “N” gear is engaged, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine maystart to charge the high-voltage battery. If the “N”, “R”, or “D” gear is engaged for a long period of time, it may cause a system failure. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure torelease the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, be sure to pull up the EPB switch, press the “P” button, take away the key, and lock all doors.
- If the 12V battery fails and the power is completely exhausted, even the external power supply cannot be used for starts, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**WARNING**

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the P button, because the vehicle can also be started (driven by the motor) when the " OK " indicator is on, even if the engine is shut down.
- With the " OK " indicator on, if the gearshift lever is shifted to the "R" or "D" position, when the brake pedal is not depressed, the vehicle will travel at a low speed. Be sure to pay attention to this situation.

- It is recommended to consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle repair or maintenance.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to an accidentor other reasons, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- It is recommended to consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before handling the vehicle because it uses a sealed 12V battery.

**WARNING**

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Press the brake pedal and pull up the EPB switch.
  - Press the P button to shut down the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock,

**WARNING**

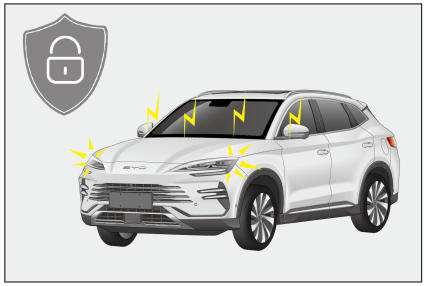
do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are uninsulated wires inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.

- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the 12V battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a special fire extinguisher to put out the fire or wait for the arrival of firefighters.
- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please tow it with all four wheels off the ground. If the wheels touch the ground during towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity, resulting in electric leakage.

# Anti-theft Alarm system

## Anti-theft Alarm system

When armed, the system sounds an alarm and triggers turn signal flash when any door is opened.



**Arming the system**

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors. This makes the anti-theft indicator steady on. The anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after 10 seconds. and the anti-theft indicator will then begin to flash.
4. You can leave the vehicle after confirming that the indicator begins to flash. Since unlocking the door from inside the vehicle will activate the system, never let anyone stay in the vehicle with the system enabled.

**Triggering the alarm**

- The system will raise an alarm in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, boot, or bonnet is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
  - The vehicle is powered on without using the smart key start function.

**Disarming the system**

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door with a valid smart key.
  - Use of the microswitch to unlock the vehicle.
  - the boot lid is opened remotely with the smart key;

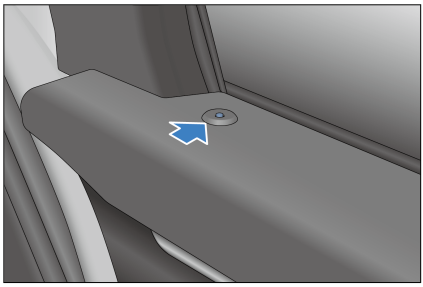
- Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
- Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

**WARNING**

- Do not modify the anti-theft system by means of alteration or addition. Otherwise, the system may fail.

**Anti-theft Indicator**

When the anti-theft system is enabled, the anti-theft indicator is solid on for ten seconds.



# Event Data Recorder System

## Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please read the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available at the infotainment system (**Vehicle Settings** → **System Settings** → **More** → **Privacy Policy**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tyre pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyse the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

**Vehicle Data Processing**

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

**In-vehicle data**

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorised dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

**Remote-services-related data**

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services.
- These include remote monitoring services such as remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data centre in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

**Other**

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

**Internet access and connected services**

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

**Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring**

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (e.g., obstacles).
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage will be stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence if you turn the camera on.
- Please be aware of corresponding laws before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see section "Panoramic View System" in this manual.

**Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode**

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, i.e., second hand vehicle, or vehicle transfer by a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalisation/user settings made via the infotainment system (e.g. address list, navigation system, etc.) may be accessed by the new owner.
- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap  to turn Wi-Fi off.
- This can also be done by tapping  → **System Settings** → **Internet** → **WLAN** → **Off**.

**Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities**

- BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorised to read out data from vehicles (e.g. data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

**Your Data Protection Rights**

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
- Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.
- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the infotainment system (**Vehicle Settings** → **System Settings** → **More** → **Privacy Policy**).

**Personal Information and Privacy Protection**

- We respect and pay attention to the protection of personal privacy, understand the importance of personal information, implement the concept of privacy protection in the process of product design, and do our best to take appropriate technical measures to protect your personal information.
- We provide a detailed privacy policy through the mobile App and the touchscreen. The policy can be inquired through the following way:
  - Mobile APP: Settings→Privacy Centre.
  - Vehicle touchscreen: System→More→BYD Vehicle System Privacy Statement.

**REMINDER**

- The above way may be slightly different from the actual way of mobile App and touchscreen.

**REMINDER**

Please refer to the actual way for details.

- It should be noted that the automotive products provided by us may include products or services developed by us, jointly developed by a third party or provided by a third party alone. Therefore, before using the specific functions of automotive products, please carefully read and fully understand the user agreement, privacy policy or other instructions corresponding to the specific functions.
- Under normal circumstances, we collect and process your personal information in the following ways. For details, please refer to the mobile App, the vehicle touchscreen, the user agreement corresponding to the specific function, the privacy policy or other instructions.

**How we collect personal information**

- Data collection methods include active collection and background collection. We start to process relevant information only after obtaining explicit authorization and consent through App Privacy Policy and Vehicle Privacy Policy. Before collecting personal sensitive information, the user's separate consent will also be obtained through an explicit pop-up window. If the purpose of processing personal information, the way of processing and the type of personal information processed are changed, we will obtain personal consent again. The user may also conveniently withdraw his or her consent. The amount, type, and frequency of information we collect is minimal.

**How we use personal information**

- We will only use personal information for the purposes stated in our Privacy Policy or in accordance with laws and regulations or as reported to regulatory authorities. If we use personal information for other purposes not specified in the privacy policy, or if we use information collected for a specific purpose for other purposes, we will ask for your consent in advance.

**How we share, transfer and disclose personal information**

- Share: We will not share your personal information with any company, organization, or individual except with express consent or as required by law or regulation. We will require companies, organizations, and individuals with whom we share personal information to treat personal information in accordance with our instructions, privacy policies, and any other relevant confidentiality and security measures.
- Transfer: We will not transfer your personal information to any company, organization, or individual except upon express request to a designated processor of your personal information or in connection with a merger, acquisition, or bankrupcy liquidation. If the transfer of personal information is involved, we will disclose to you the name, contact information, processing purpose, processing method and type of personal information of the recipient, require the company or organization receiving your personal information to continue to be bound by the relevant privacy policy, and require the company or organization to re-seek your authorization and consent if necessary.
- Disclose: We will only disclose personal information with your consent or as required by law, legal

proceedings, litigation or government authorities.

**How we store personal information**

- We only retain personal information for the shortest period necessary for the purpose of providing you with our products and/or services, or as required by laws and regulations. Your personal information may be stored for different periods depending on the product/service you use.
- Your personal information will be stored on cloud servers located in mainland China and will not be transferred outside the country without your consent.

**How we handle personal information about minors**

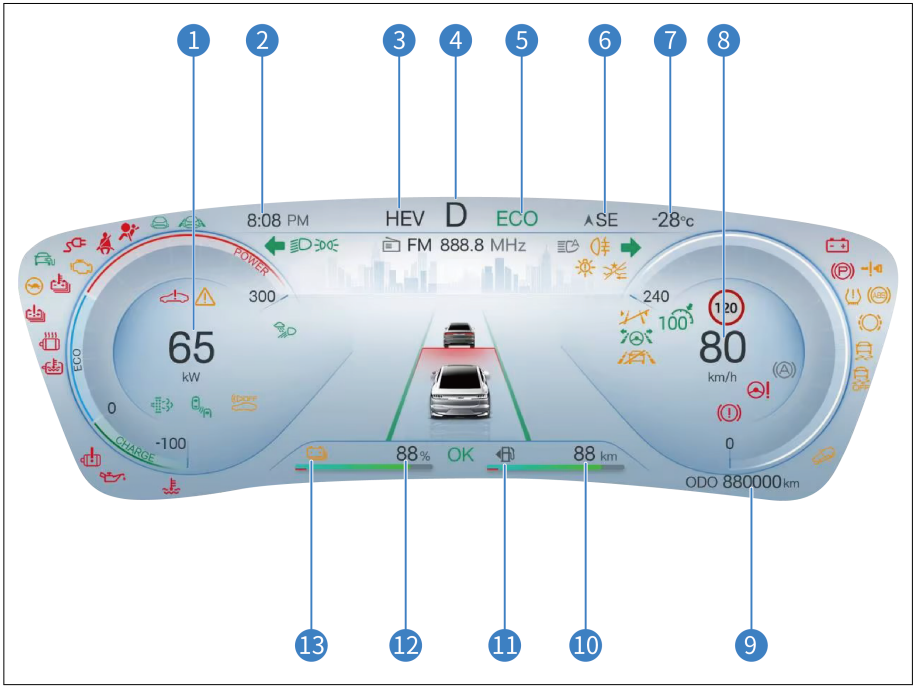
- We have always attached great importance to and committed to the protection of minors' personal information. Our products and/or services are intended for adults only. If you are a minor, you may not create your own user account without the consent of your parents or other legal guardians. In the event that we collect personal information from minors under the age of 14 with the consent of their legal guardians, we will only use this data as permitted by law, with the express consent of their legal guardians, or as necessary to protect the legitimate rights and interests of minors under the age of 14.

# 02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....50

# Instrument Cluster

## Instrument Cluster View




| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Power meter |
| 2 | Time |
| 3 | Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) |
| 4 | Gear status |
| 5 | ECO/SPORT/NORMAL/Snow/ Sand/Mud Mode |
| 6 | Direction |
| 7 | Outside temperature |
| 8 | Speedometer |
| 9 | Milometer |
| 10 | Fuel driving range |
| 11 | Fuel gauge |
| 12 | Battery SOC percentage (battery driving range) |
| 13 | State of charge (SOC) |

**REMINDER**

The above views are schematic diagrams for reference only. The battery SOC percentage and battery driving range in the diagrams cannot be displayed simultaneously.
In addition, the user can access the energy display settings through multimedia system →New Energy to select the display of "Mileage" and "SOC".

**REMINDER**

## Instrument Cluster Indicators

**Indicators and Warning Lights**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Turn signal indicator |  | Position light indicator |
|  | Discharge indicator |  | ICC indicator* |
|  | Hill descend control indicator |  | AEB indicator* |
|  | AVH indicator | OK | OK indicator |
| ECO | ECO indicator |  | Low Beam Indicator |
| SPORT | SPORT indicator |  | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC indicator) * |
| NORMAL | NORMAL indicator |  | BSD indicator* |
| EV | EV Indicator | HEV | HEV Indicator |
|  | HMA indicator* |  | High beam indicator |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Low fuel warning light |  | ACC fault indicator* |
|  | AEB fault warning light* |  | Snow mode indicator |
|  | Rear fog light indicator |  | Headlight fault warning light |
|  | ESC warning light |  | ESC OFF warning light |
|  | Tyre pressure fault warning light |  | Smart key warning light |
|  | Main alarm indicator |  | High-voltage battery low SOC warning light |
|  | ABS fault warning light |  | Driving power limit indicator |
|  | Engine fault warning light |  | Oil life monitoring indicator* |
|  | Hill descend control fault indicator* |  | DMS self-inspection fault indicator |
|  | CPD fault indicator |  | Door status indicator |
|  | Seat belt reminder |  | EPB indicator |
|  | Charging connection indicator |  | SRS fault warning light |
|  | Parking system fault warning light |  | Powertrain fault warning light |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | High-voltage battery fault warning light |  | High-voltage battery overheating warning light |
|  | Motor overheating warning light |  | Towing mode indicator |
|  | Steering system fault warning light |  | Motor coolant overheating indicator |
|  | Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)* |  | Low oil pressure warning light |
|  | Motor fault warning light* |  | Low-voltage power system warning light |
|  | Engine coolant overheating indicator | | |

**Description of instrument cluster fault/ prompt indicator**



**Smart key warning light**

- Press the START/STOP button. If the key is not inside the vehicle, the warning light lights up for several seconds, the speaker sounds once, and the display screen displays "No key is detected. Please confirm whether it is inside the vehicle”.
- If the START/STOP button is pressed with the key inside the vehicle, this warning light does not light up, and the vehicle can be powered on.
- If the warning light flashes when the START/STOP button is pressed, it indicates low battery of the key.




**ABS fault warning light**

- With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (the parking system fault warning light goes out), the ABS does not work, but the parking system still works normally.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the anti-lock braking system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

- With the vehicle powered on, this warning light does not light up or stays on.
- This warning light turns on during driving.

**REMINDER**

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

- If both ABS indicator and the braking system indicator are on and the electronic parking brake (EPB) is fully released, the braking force distribution system of front and rear wheels has also failed.



**Tyre pressure fault warning light**

- With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tyre pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tyre pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tyre pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tyre pressure system is faulty.
- When the tyre pressure fault warning light flashes rapidly, and one or more values turn red on the tyre pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tyre is leaking rapidly.
- When this indicator stays on, along with one or more figures shown on the tyre pressure display interface of the dashboard display screen turning yellow, it indicates low pressure in one or more tyres.

In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



**ESC warning light**

- With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on. IfESC system works properly, this warning light turns off after a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.
- If the ESC fault warning light flashes while the vehicle is traveling, it indicates that the ESC is working.
- When the ESC fault warning light goes on (the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light go out), the ESC system fails, but the ABS and the braking system still work normally.
- When the ESC fault warning light goes on (the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light go out), the vehicle is extremely unstable during emergency turning and emergency avoidance from obstacles ahead due to the failure of the ESC system.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

- With the vehicle powered on, this warning light does not light up or stays on.
- This warning light is steady on while driving.
- If the ESC fault warning light flashes while the vehicle is traveling, it indicates that the ESC is working.

**REMINDER**

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light is still on while the ABS fault warning light and braking system warning light are on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.




**ESC OFF warning light**

- When the ESC OFF switch is pressed, this warning light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system resumes its normal operation.

**CAUTION**

- While the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and keep driving at a lower speed when making a sharp turn and when avoiding an obstacle which appears suddenly, because

**CAUTION**

braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of ESC system.



**Main alarm indicator**

If this indicator goes on, check the fault prompt or warning on the instrument cluster.



**Headlight fault warning light**

When the warning light is yellow, it indicates the headlight is faulty, and it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.



**Driving power limit warning light**

If this indicator illuminates when the vehicle power is limited, contact a BYD authorized service provider in time.



**Engine fault warning light**

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Even though abnormalities in vehicle performance may not be noticed, continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- If this indicator lights up during non-self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, power it on again, start the engine and check this warning light. If this warning light is still on, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon

as possible. Before the BYD authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, be careful to drive the vehicle and avoid driving at a high speed or fully pressing the accelerator pedal.

- If the fault indicator lights up frequently, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

**CAUTION**

- Continuous driving after the emission fault indicator is on may cause damage to the emission control system or the engine itself.



Low fuel warning light

This indicator is located on the fuel gauge. If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver that the fuel is about to be used up. Should this occur, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel level warning light may be on earlier than usual.



**Parking system fault warning light**

- This warning light will illuminate when the brake fluid level is low or the braking system becomes faulty.
- In any of the following cases, park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - This warning light illuminates when the brake fluid level is low with the power ON.

**REMINDER**

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.

  - When the motor is running, this warning light stays on if the brake fluid level is normal and the EPB system works normally (the EPB switch is pulled up and released normally, and there is no prompt of "Please check the EPB system").
  - The parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time.

**REMINDER**

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.



**Seat belt reminder**

With the power ON, if any seat belt is not fastened, the seat belt indicator lights up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.



**Low-voltage power system warning light**

- In charging state, this warning light indicates failure of the charging system.
- This indicator is used to warn discharging system fault during discharging.
- This light is used to warn about the operating state of the DC module and the low-voltage battery module when the vehicle is not being charged or discharging.

- If this indicator is on during driving, it indicates faulty DC system or battery system. In this case, turn off the A/C and fan, and drive the vehicle to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.



**SRS fault warning light**

- With the vehicle powered on, this warning light is on. If the airbag system works normally, it goes out after a few seconds. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light does not light up or stays on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.



**Motor coolant overheating indicator**

If this warning light keeps lighting up, it indicates motor coolant over temperature. In this case, stop the vehicle in order to cool down.



**Steering system fault warning light**

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

**REMINDER**

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard coming from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the temperature protection will be activated and the steering system will be damaged or steering will become heavy.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be redcued if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, avoid frequently turning the steering wheel or stopping the vehicle; the system will return to normal in 10 min.

**WARNING**

- If the steering system warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.



**Powertrain fault warning light**

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.

- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

**CAUTION**

- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the warning light is on, try not to drive the vehicle, but contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for troubleshooting as soon as possible.



**High-voltage battery overheating warning light**

- If this indicator is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. If the indicator flashes, stop the vehicle immediately and leave it as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather.
  - Long stop-and-go traffic state, frequent rapid acceleration and braking, or continuous running without rest.



**High-voltage battery fault warning light**

- When the vehicle is powered ON, this warning light will illuminate. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, this light will light up again. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - With the vehicle powered on, this warning light stays on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.



**Motor overheating warning light**

If this indicator is on, it indicates that the motor is too hot. Should this occur, stop the vehicle immediately to let it cool down.



**Low oil pressure warning light**

- This warning light is on in case of low oil pressure.
- If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, park the vehicle in a safe place, shut down the engine immediately. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine is damaged.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may

**CAUTION**

flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal, which does not indicate a problem.




**Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)***

When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognised the speed limit value on current road section.



**AEB indicator* (red)**

When this warning light is on or flashes, pay attention to the distance from the vehicle ahead, and do not get too close to it to prevent potential collision.



**Door status indicator**

If a door, the boot lid or the hood is not closed, the vehicle body and corresponding status prompt are displayed. When the vehicle speed exceeds a certain value, the message "Door, boot lid or hood is not closed." is displayed.

# 03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys..... 62
Seats..... 75
Steering Wheel..... 79
Switches..... 79

# Doors and Keys

## Keys

The vehicle is equipped with an electronic intelligent key, NFC phone and a mechanical key (in the smart key) that allow you to unlock/lock vehicle doors, start the vehicle and implement other functions.

**Electronic Smart Key**

Electronic Smart Key: Lock/Unlock all doors by pressing the front left/right door microswitch while carrying the electronic smart key. This key features various functions, including smart start-up, remote boot lid control, smart access, start-up in no-power mode, remote vehicle locating, and low SOC reminder.



Lock/Unlock all doors by pressing the front left/right door microswitch while carrying the electronic smart key. Buttons on the intelligent key help you lock/unlock doors, open the boot lid, perform a remote start, and locate your vehicle.

When the electronic smart key stands for more than 1min, the smart key actively enters the sleep state. At this time, the functions of the microswitch such as unlocking or starting the vehicle fail to prevent others from using relay attacks to enter or start the vehicle; Moving the smart key again or pressing the key button can release the sleep state and the vehicle function returns to normal.

Model: D0-92/D1-92

Operating power supply: button cell battery

Battery Model: CR2032

Nominal voltage: 3V

Operating voltage: 2.9V~3.3V

Normal operating current: 8mA (nominal current)

Low-frequency resonance frequency: 125KHZ

Key operating frequency: 434MHz

FCC ID: 2A5DH-DAEA-92

This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

**WARNING**

Button battery safety warnings:

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.

**WARNING**

- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

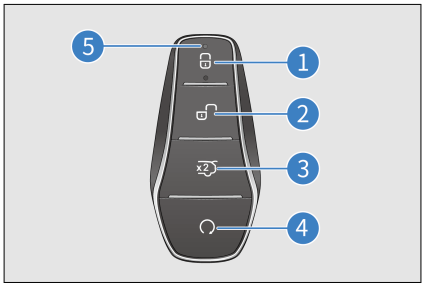
① Lock button

② Unlock button

③ Boot lid open button

④ Start/Stop button

⑤ Indicator




**CAUTION**

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not place the smart key in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not tamper with the smart key.
  - Do not hit other objects with the smart key or drop it.

**CAUTION**

  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach any objects (such as a metal seal) which cut off electromagnetic wave signals when using the card.
  - You can register a spare key for the same car. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.
- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If the smart key is lost, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider as soon as possible to prevent theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), do not arbitrarily connect the external detection

**CAUTION**

aerial or switch other transmitting detection aerials.

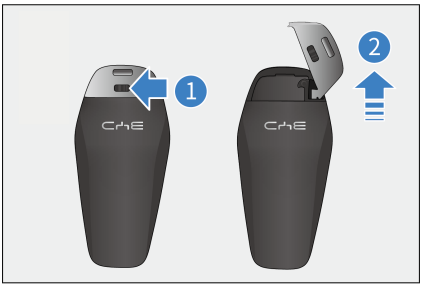
- Do not generate harmful interference to legal radio communication services when using the smart key. Once any interference is found, stop using the smart key immediately, and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must be free from interference of all radio services or from radiation of devices for industrial, scientific and medical applications.
- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrilators should stay away from the detection aerials of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrilators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.

**Mechanical Key**

Mechanical key (in the smart key) - Unlock/Lock the driver's door. Insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

**Taking out the mechanical key**

- Slide the unlock clasp in the direction of arrow ①, then pull the key cap in the direction of arrow ②, and take out the mechanical key, as shown in the figure.
- To return the mechanical key to its original position, insert it in the opposite direction of arrow ② and close the key cap.




**NFC Digital Key**

**NFC Digital Key**

NFC is a digital key system provided by BYD. It allows you to register your phone or wearable device as your vehicle key, and unlock, lock and start your vehicle safely and easily.

The following conditions are required to use the NFC digital key. Please ensure that all conditions are met before using it:

- The vehicle has enabled the BYD Cloud service;
- The vehicle is configured and supports NFC digital key function;
- Relevant mobile phone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key function (please consult your BYD distributor and provider for specific supported device models).

**Enabling NFC Digital Key**

It can be enabled in any of the following methods, including: BYD APP、vehicle setting: Before activating it, please enter the vehicle with the physical key, start the vehicle and keep it in “P” gear.

1. BYD APP: Please go to the mobile APP store to download BYD APP, complete registration and login. Click "NFC/ Digital key" and follow the prompts.
2. Vehicle setting: Please enter vehicle setting on the multimedia touchscreen, and click "Digital Key" module to activate. The path to Digital Key: → Vehicle Settings → Windows and Locks→Digital Key.

**Enabling the NFC digital key with wearable device**

Wearable devices support Apple Watch (for other wearable devices, please consult the distributor and provider), it can be enabled in any of the following ways:

1. Sync the iPhone to the Apple Watch after successful activation: Activate the iPhone digital key after wearing the unlocked watch. After the iPhone is successfully activated, the prompts can be synchronized to nearby Apple Watch to add the digital key, and complete the activation steps accordingly.
2. Watch APP activation: It applies to the case that the iPhone digital key is not synchronized to the Apple Watch when it is activated. Please open the Watch APP, select "Wallet", find the corresponding key, and click "Add" to complete activation steps accordingly.

**The Usage of NFC digital key**

When using, please turn on the NFC function of the device and use it according to the following prompts:

- Carrying a mobile phone/wearable device with an NFC digital key enabled, unlock/lock the vehicle by placing its NFC aerial area close to the NFC sign on the side mirror of the driver’ s side (for NFC aerial area, please consult your device provider);
- After entering the vehicle, please place the mobile phone or wearable device in the NFC open area of the mobile phone to get the vehicle start permission.

**CAUTION**

- Start the vehicle as soon as possible after you have obtained the start permission using the NFC digital key. After entering the vehicle, please place the mobile phone or wearable device in the NFC open area of the mobile phone to get the vehicle start permission.

**The Removal of NFC Digital Key**

The digital key can be deleted in any of the following methods:

1. Delete in BYD APP: Open BYD APP to enter the digital key management page, click the digital key to be deleted, and enter the operation password to complete the deletion;
2. Delete on the multimedia touchscreen: Please bring the physical key into the car, open the multimedia touchscreen, enter the Vehicle Settings→Windows and Locks →Digital Key management page, click the digital key to be deleted, and complete the deletion according to the prompts;
3. Delete in the wallet: Open the system wallet, find the digital key card that needs to be deleted, and complete the deletion according to the system prompts.

**Mobile Phone Bluetooth Digital Key***

Use the BYD Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range mobile phone Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.

- You can download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- If you are using a vehicle with a mobile phone Bluetooth key configuration, to set up the Bluetooth key, perform the following steps next to the vehicle:
  1. Open the BYD application
  2. Turn on the mobile phone Bluetooth.
  3. Select the corresponding vehicle
  4. Activate the Bluetooth key by clicking the "Bluetooth key setting button" on the car page.
- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The Bluetooth key function of the mobile phone is connected through Bluetooth and sends control instructions to the vehicle without relying on the mobile network status of the mobile phone.
- Your Bluetooth key is deleted when you unbind the vehicle or log out of the cloud.

**CAUTION**

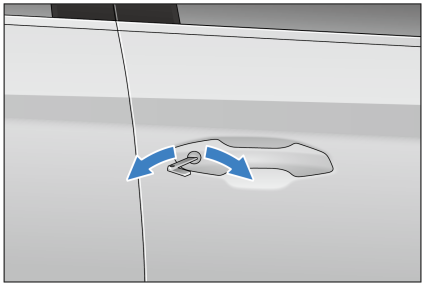
- Before activating the mobile phone Bluetooth vehicle key, it is necessary to ensure that the network signal at the vehicle end is good. If the activation fails, you can try to move the vehicle to a good network location and activate the Bluetooth key at the app end again.
- After the Bluetooth key of the mobile phone is unlocked, the door will be automatically locked without any operation in a short time.
- When the phone Bluetooth key fails to connect or fails to operate for many times, you can try to turn off the system Bluetooth and then turn it on, or try to restart the application.
- The use distance of mobile phone Bluetooth car key is limited by the environment around the car and the performance of the mobile phone. In the case of dense vehicles, the use distance will be shortened.
- The mobile phone Bluetooth key requires your mobile phone to turn on the Bluetooth switch. In case of any problem, please contact the dealer.

## Locking/Unlocking Doors

**Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key**

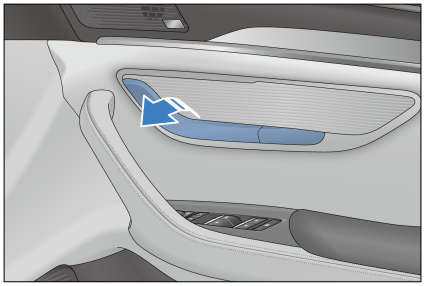
Pull the driver's door handle to its maximum angle. Insert, turn, and then pull out the mechanical key. Pull on the door handle to open the door.

- Turn the key anticlockwise.
- Turn the key clockwise.



**Opening with Interior Door Handle**

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked and powered OFF, doors fail to be opened from inside the vehicle.



**CAUTION**

- Ensure there is no occupant in the powered-off vehicle with doors locked, or it may result in danger of being locked.
- Cold temperatures may make it more difficult to close the doors in winter conditions. In this case, you can use your hand to push and close the door until the door is closed, and then stop pushing.
- Under extremely low temperature conditions, you can turn on the air conditioner for a period of time

**CAUTION**

and then close the door according to the above operation method.

**Locking/Unlocking/Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key**

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key to lock or unlock all doors.

**Locking:**

- With the vehicle powered OFF:
  - When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all door outside locks simultaneously. The external rearview mirrors are folded in (when the "Auto" switch of mirrors is on), the turn signals flash once, and all door inside locks are locked after about 8s. Check whether all doors are locked firmly.



  - If any door, hood or boot lid is not closed, the door outside lock of the closed door can be locked by the intelligent key, but the turn signals do not flash, and the horn sounds once.
- With the vehicle powered ON:

- When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all door outside locks simultaneously. The side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once after 2.5 seconds.

**CAUTION**

- The person in the locked car can not open the door, and it needs to be unlocked before opening the door.

**Unlocking:**

- Press the unlock button to unlock all the doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- Doors can be unlocked/locked with the unlock/lock button under any power state.
- When the intelligent key is used to unlock all doors simultaneously, even if the doors are not opened, if the "DOOR" switch is turned on, the interior light goes on for 15s and then goes out (the user can slide down the status bar on the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the "DOOR" switch).
- After unlocking the vehicle in anti-theft mode with a smart key, open any door within 30 seconds. or all doors will relock automatically.
- If the lock or unlock button is pressed and held, the locking or unlocking function is not repeated. Release the button and press it to realize the function again.
- If the key is placed in the locked vehicle, and the boot lid is closed, the vehicle is unlocked actively, and the turn signals flash twice.

**Finding the vehicle**

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button makes the vehicle sounds a long beep and turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

**Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key***

- With the vehicle powered off:
  - Press and hold the lock button of the smart key to roll up four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button of the intelligent key to roll down four windows.
- The user can turn on or off the above functions via (infotainment system) → Vehicle settings → Locks. By default, the rolling up function is turned on, and the rolling down function is turned off.

**WARNING**

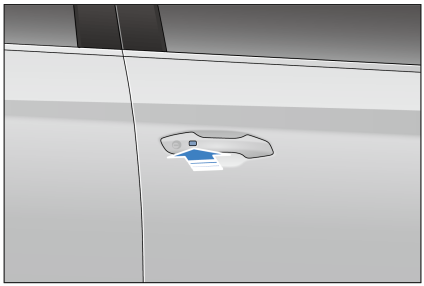
- Before activating the remote window closing, please confirm that any body part of passengers in the vehicle will not be stuck or clamped by the window.

**Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch**

**Locking**

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - When doors are closed but unlocked, carry the intelligent key and press the microswitch on the front door handle to lock all doors simultaneously. The external rearview mirrors are folded in (when

the "Auto" switch of mirrors is on), the turn signals flash once, and all door inside locks are locked after about 8s. Check whether all doors are locked firmly.



- With the vehicle powered ON:
  - When doors are closed, carry the intelligent key and press the microswitch on the front door handle to lock all doors simultaneously. If side mirrors do not fold, turn signals do not flash, and the alarm sounds once.
  - If any door, hood or boot lid is not closed, door outside locks can be locked with the microswitch, but the turn signals do not flash, and the horn sounds once.

**Unlocking**

- In the anti-theft state, when carrying the smart key into the activation area, press the microswitch on the front door handle to unlock all doors simultaneously. The turn signals flash twice.
- In anti-theft mode, after activating the unlock function, open the doors within 30 seconds, or all doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The key is in the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

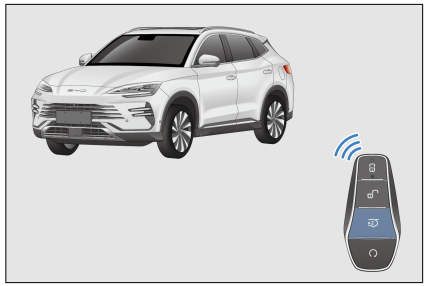
**Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch**

With the vehicle powered off, carry an effective smart key and press and hold the microswitch to realize automatic rolling up/down of four windows. Turn on or off the functions via (infotainment system) → Vehicle Settings → Locks. By default, the rolling up function is turned on, and the rolling down function is turned off.

**Locking/Unlocking the Boot**

**Opening/Closing boot with smart key ***

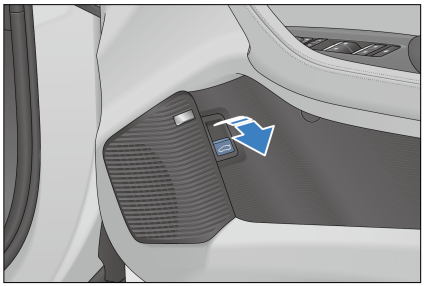
Double press the boot lid open button on the smart key to open the boot lid. Turn signals flash twice. Press this button again to stop opening. Then double press it to close the boot.



**Opening/Closing the boot from inside the vehicle**

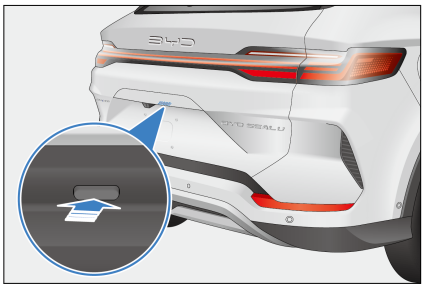
- When the boot lid is closed, if the switch is pulled once, the boot lid is unlocked and run to the set height (maximum height by default).

- When the vehicle is powered on and the boot lid is opened, pull up this switch to close the boot lid, and release it to stop this lid at the current position.



**Opening the boot with exterior switch**

Press the exterior boot lid switch while carrying the smart key or when the vehicle is unlocked to open the boot lid.

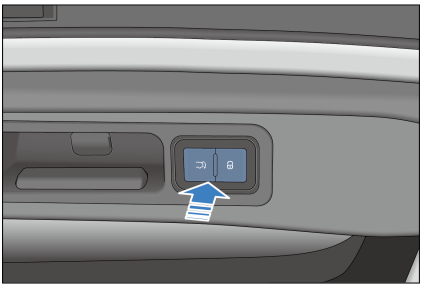


**REMINDER**

- If the switch is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position. If the button is then pressed again, this lid moves in the opposite direction.

**① Power boot lid close button***

- When the boot lid is open and stationary, press the boot close button to close this lid.
- Press the boot close button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. If the button is then pressed again, this lid will move in the opposite direction.



**② Vehicle lock button***

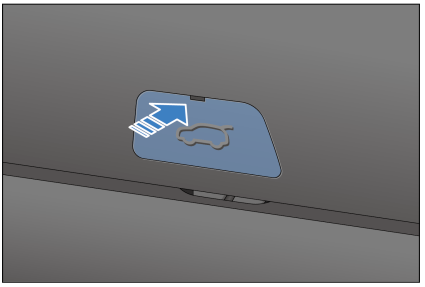
- When the vehicle is powered off and the boot lid is opened, carry an effective smart key and press the locking button to close the boot lid, lock the vehicle and enter the anti-theft state.

**REMINDER**

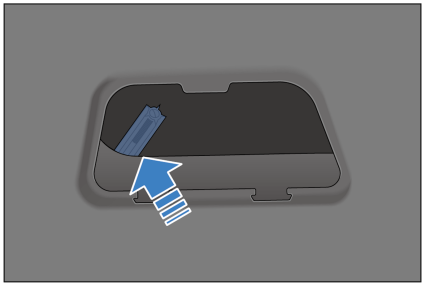
- Before closing the boot electronically, make sure doors, windows and sunroof are properly closed.

**Interior emergency unlocking of boot lid**

1. Remove the maintenance cover of boot lid lock from the boot panel.



2. Pull the lever to unlock the boot.



**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered off, the boot can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

**Setting boot opening height**

- Open the boot manually or automatically to the desired position, keep it at this position, and then press and hold the interior boot button for over three seconds. The speaker sounds for one second, indicating that the opening height is successfully set to the current position.
- Adjust the boot open height via (infotainment system) → Vehicle Settings → Locks.

**Anti-pinch**

- The power boot lid can automatically open when obstructed by external force during closing.
- It stops moving when obstructed by external force during opening.

**When the boot fails to act automatically**

Manually and completely close the boot for recovery.

**When reconnecting 12V battery**

Manually close the boot to ensure the power boot lid functions normally.

**WARNING**

In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
- Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
- Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the boot.
- Make sure the boot is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
- Make sure to remove any ice or snow from the area before opening the boot, otherwise the lid may close again.
- Do not manually interfere in lid motion when it is opening or closing.
- Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the boot.
- The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the boot is fully closed.
- The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the boot on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the boot, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.
- The anti-pinch function may fail depending on the object shape.

**WARNING**

Be careful not to get your fingers or anything else caught.

### Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

#### Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

Refer to "Driver Door Switch Group"in this chapter.

#### Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h (5mph).
- When theSTART/STOP button is pressed and the power is switched from "ON" to "OFF", all doors are locked automatically.

#### Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- With the anti-theft alarm system disarmed, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

**REMINDER**

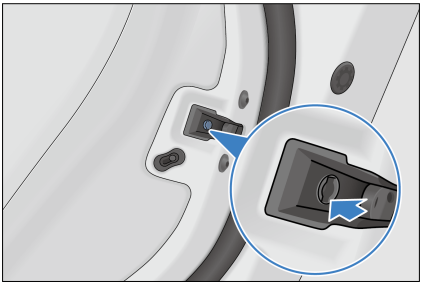
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

#### Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

**Locking:**

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Open the other three doors except the driver's door, and push the white slider downward for these three doors respectively with the mechanical key teeth in the direction of the arrow, as shown in the figure, to close and lock the door.



3. After locking the other three doors except the driver's door, open the driver's door, lift and hold the door handle, and pull it to the maximum opening angle.
4. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it anticlockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out. (See "Locking/ Unlocking with Mechanical Key" in this Chapter.)
5. Release the door handle and check whether all doors are locked.

**Unlocking:**

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.

2. Lift and hold the door handle and pull it to the maximum opening angle.
3. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.
4. Release the door handle, and pull it again to open the driver's door.
5. Pull the interior handle twice to unlock the three other doors.

**REMINDER**

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

## Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

### Access

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors (for details, please refer to "Vehicle locking/unlocking/locating with smart key"and "Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch").

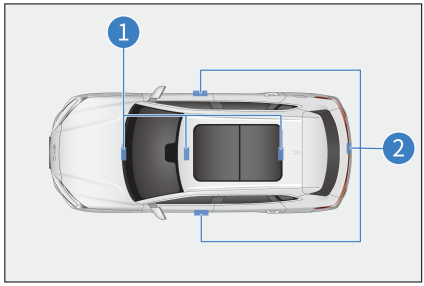
### Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle. (Refer to “Starting the Vehicle".)

### Aerial positions

① Interior aerial

② Exterior aerial



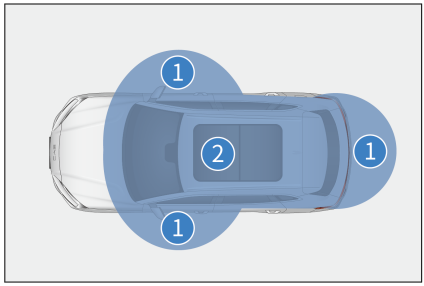

### Active area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

① The entry function activation area is about 1.2 m away from the door handles on both sides and the boot lid release button.

② The start function activation area is located in the compartment.

If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.




**REMINDER**

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.

**REMINDER**

- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- The battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Pressing the Start/Stop button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the smart key does not work, the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster goes on, and the information display screen on the instrument cluster displays a prompt about the low SOC of the key battery, the battery SOC of the key may have run out.
  - Start the drive motor repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10s before starting the vehicle.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.

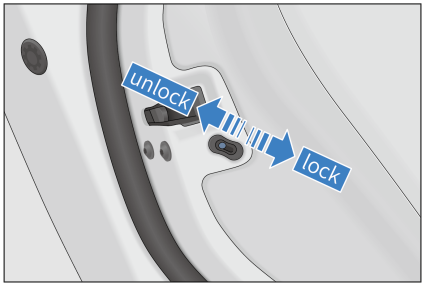
**Saving battery power**

- The smart key communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the key in the vehicle or within 2 m from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least 3.3 ft (1 meter) away from the following devices:
  - TVs
  - PCs
  - Wireless telephone chargers
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent table lamps

## Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle while the latch is locked. To open this door, use the exterior door handle.




**CAUTION**

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident. and also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

# Seats

## Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedal, steering wheel and dashboard controller are easy to control for the driver.
- The most effective safeguard while driving is to keep the seatback upright, always resting well on the seatback, and adjusting the seat belt to the right position.
- Do not fold in the rear seats during driving.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving.

Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.

**WARNING**

- Do not sit on the upper part of the folded seat backrest or on the goods. Otherwise, people may be seriously injured due to improper sitting on the seat or improper fastening of the seat belt in case of emergency braking or collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism or accidentally push up the seat position adjustment lever, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback has been locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, you and your passengers could hit the strap in an accident, causing serious injury to the neck or other parts; or you and your passenger may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- During driving, no one is allowed to sit in the boot area or on the folded seat. Using these areas without proper protective measures may cause serious

**WARNING**

injuries in case of an accident or sudden braking.

- Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control at this time.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Before laying the rear seats down, check the positions of the rear headrests and the front seats, to avoid interference among the rear seats, the front seats and central passage.

**REMINDER**

- When folding in the rear seats, be careful not to damage the seat belt, and check whether the buckle is correctly placed in the buckle slot on the seat cushion.
- Do not fasten seat belts before seat adjustment.
- While adjusting a seat, do not let it hit against any passenger or the luggage.
- During the measurement of seat cushion depth, the front and rear positions of the seat are the rearmost positions of the slide rail, and the design angle of the backrest is 25°.
- During the measurement of seat cushion width, adjust the backrest angle to the designed state (the backrest angle of the second row seats is 28°), and adjust the seat slide rail* to the rearmost position. For the separable and combinable seats in the same row,

**REMINDER**

measure the cushion width as a whole row of seats.

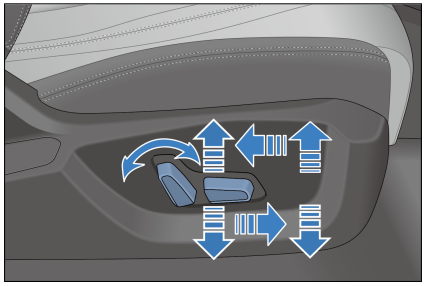
## Adjusting Front Seats

### Adjusting Front Seat with Power*

Electrical front seats adjustment includes back-and-forth adjustment of seat, up-and-down adjustment of seat cushion*, angle adjustment of seat base* and seatbacks. Choose the following methods according to the functions available in your vehicle.

**Seat position adjustment switch**

- Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.
- Move the front end of the switch up or down to change the seat base angle.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to raise or lower the seat.



**Seatback angle adjustment switch**

- Move this switch forward or backward to adjust the seatback angle.

**REMINDER**

- Releasing the switch stops the seat in this position. Do not

**REMINDER**

place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.

**Heating and Ventilation Systems***

The user can slide down the state bar on the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the seat heating and ventilation system.

**Heating adjustment**

- Seat heating: To control the heating modes, the user operates the seat heating switch on the infotainment touchscreen. The heating function includes: high-temperature mode and low-temperature mode.
  - The initial state of the heating indicator is off after power-on.
  - When the switch is pressed for the first time, the seat heater works in the high-temperature mode, and the two heating indicators light up.
  - When the switch is pressed for the second time, the seat heating pad works in the low-temperature mode, the first indicator lights up, and the second indicator goes out.
  - When the switch is pressed for the third time, the heating function is turned off and both indicators go out.

**Ventilation adjustment**

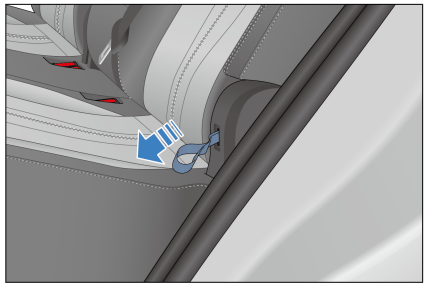
- Ventilated seat: To control the working mode of the ventilation fan, the user operates the seat ventilation switch on the infotainment touchscreen. The seat ventilation includes: high-speed ventilation and low-speed ventilation.
  - The initial state of the ventilation indicator is off after power-on.
  - When the switch is pressed for the first time, the seat ventilation fan works at a high speed, and two ventilation indicators light up.
  - When the switch is pressed for the second time, the seat ventilation fan works at a low speed, the first indicator lights up, and the second indicator goes out.
  - When the switch is pressed for the third time, the ventilation function is turned off and both indicators go out.

**Ventilation and heating functions cannot be turned on at the same time**

- Press the ventilation switch to make the ventilator work; if the heating switch is then pressed, the ventilator will stop and the heater will start to work.
- Press the heating switch to make the heater work; if the ventilation switch is then pressed, the heater will stop and the ventilator will start to work.

## Folding Rear Seats

Pull the strap on the rear seat to fold the bench.



**REMINDER**

- Please fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up

**REMINDER**

seatbacks to prevent damage to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.

- When unfolding a rear seat, do not push the seatback hard; otherwise, the seatback will be pre-stressed and impossible to unlock.
- When unfolding a seatback, check that the buckle position is proper to expose the reserved opening on the seat.
- Do not turn over the seat when the seat belt latch is inserted into the buckle.

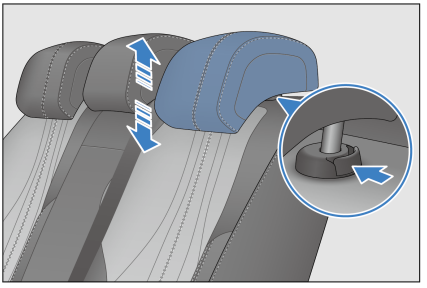
## Rear Seat Head Supports

1. Lifting a head support

Lift the head support in the direction of the head post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

2. Lowering the head support

Press the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.



3. Removing the head support

Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support, and release the button.

4. Installing the head support

Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press the head support adjustment button, push down the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.

**REMINDER**

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its centre aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the centre line of the head support.
- After adjusting the head support, ensure that it is locked into position.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any object to the head support lever.

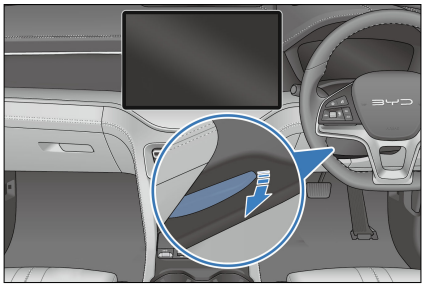
# Steering Wheel

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

To adjust the angle or axial position of the steering wheel, hold it and perform the following operations:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle downward to tilt the steering wheel to the desired position, and then restore the handle to the locking position.



**WARNING**

- Do not adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is running. Otherwise, misoperation of the vehicle may be caused, resulting in an accident.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to confirm that it is firmly locked.

### Power-Assisted Steering Mode Settings

- The feel of steering assistance varies from person to person, and so do the evaluation and needs for this feel.
- Choose Comfort or Sport mode via →Vehicle Settings→Smart Chassis.

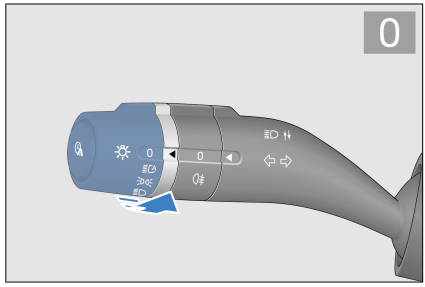
**REMINDER**

- Setting the power steering to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed.

# Switches

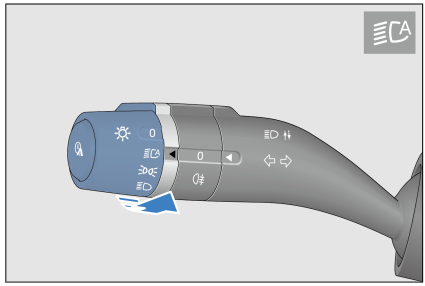
## Light Switches

Rotate the knob at the end of the light switch to 0 to turn off all lights (except for daytime running lights).



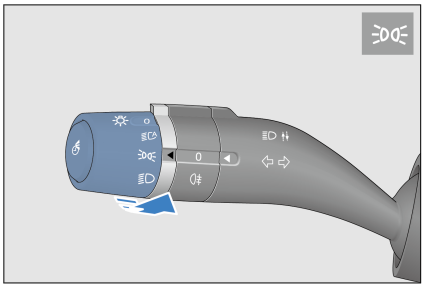

### Auto lights

Turn this knob to " ". BCM collects the brightness value acquired by the light intensity sensor and automatically turns on/off position lights and low beams.



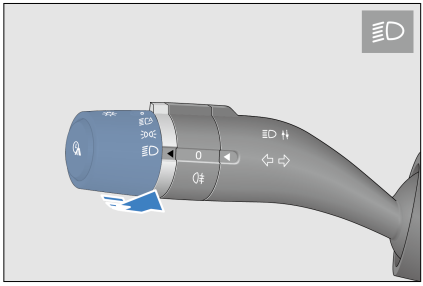
### Position lights

Set the light switch to ≡D to turn on position lights.



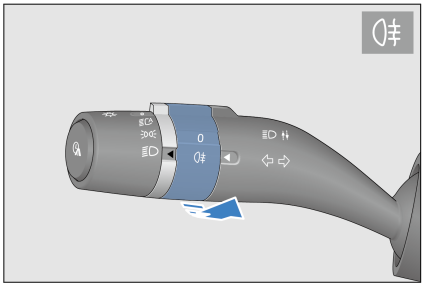
**Low beam**

Set the light switch to ≡D to turn on the low beam.



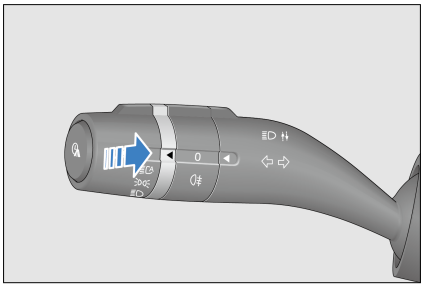
**Rear fog lights**

Rotate this knob to ≡D and rotate the fog light knob to ⧵ to turn on the rear fog lights.



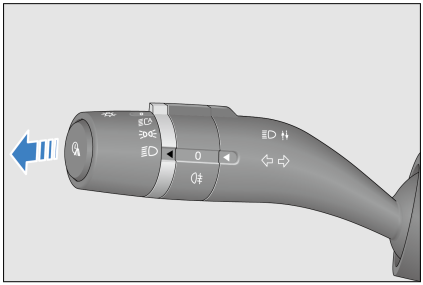
**Overtaking light**

Press the light switch lever (toward the steering wheel) to light up overtaking lights. Release it, and the lever resets automatically and overtaking lights go out.



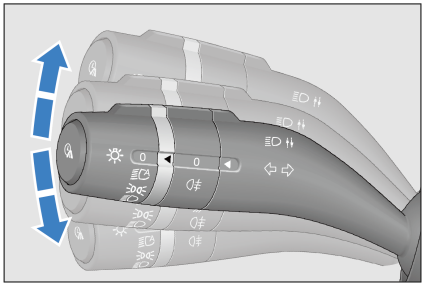
**High beam**

When this knob is rotated to ≡D , turn the switch away from the steering wheel to turn on high beams, and then turn it again to turn off high beams.



**Turn signals**

- Push up the lever to signal right turn. The right turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.
- Pull down the lever to signal left turn. The left turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.



- Once turned on, turn signals continue flashing even after the lever is released. They will turn off after the turn is complete. Depending on the driver's habit, the turn signal will reset after the vehicle turns around under some extreme conditions.

**Auto light off**

- Conditions to activate the auto light off function: To activate this function, set the light switch to or and switch off the vehicle power.
- With the auto off function activated, if the driver's door is closed, this function automatically turns off headlights and position lights after 10 s.
- With the auto off function activated, if the driver's door is opened, this function automatically turns off headlights and position lights after 10 min.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling of the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- The auto off function turns off the lights. If the anti-theft state is activated and then deactivated, the lights turned off before are automatically turned on again. If the driver's door is not opened, this function turns off the lights again after 10 s. But if any door is open, it turns off the light in 10 minutes.

**"Follow me home" function**

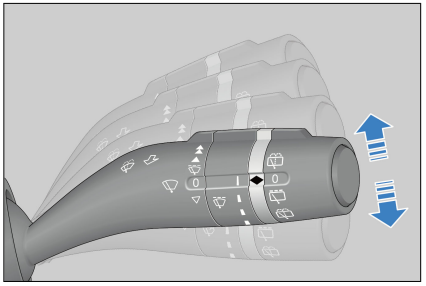
- **Follow me home headlight**:
  - The user can go to the "Follow me home delay" setting interface via the Infotainment → Vehicle settings → Light & ambient to set the time of follow me home. The default time is 10 s. When the light switch is rotated to the , or position, and the owner powers off the vehicle, locks the four doors, and tries to leave the vehicle, the corresponding lights continue to light up for 10 s (or a set time) to provide the lighting source.
- **Headlights before entering**:
  - The user can go to the "Follow me home delay" setting interface via the Infotainment → Vehicle settings → Light & ambient to set the time of follow me home. The default time is 10 s. When the light switch is rotated to the , or position, and the owner unlocks the vehicle and tries to get close to it, the corresponding lights continue to light up for 10 s (or a set time) to provide the lighting source.

**CAUTION**

- The duration of lightening can be changed by infotainment interface.

# Wiper Switch

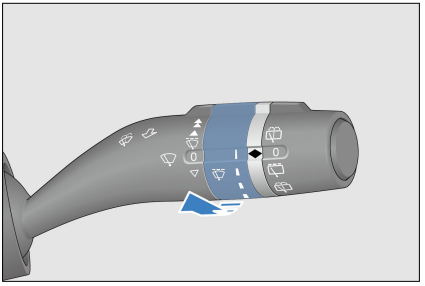
- The lever is used to control the windscreen wipers and washer. It has five modes:
  - ▲▲ : Fast
  - ▲ : Slow
  - : Intermittent
  - 0 : Off
  - ▽ : Point-wiping



- Push up or pull down the lever to select a mode.
- In slow and fast modes, the wiper operates continuously.
- To let wipers work in the spot-wiping mode “ ▽ ”, pull the lever from the “ 0 ” position. In this mode, the front windscreen wipers operate at a low speed until the lever is released.

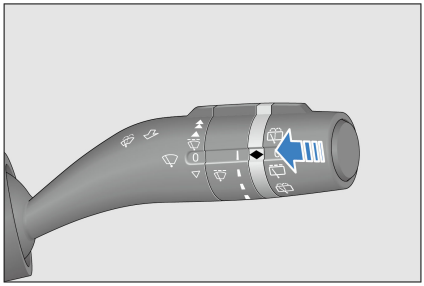
**Automatic wiper/Intermittent mode**

- The rain sensor automatically controls the operation mode of wipers based on the rainfall, and it is located in front of the interior rearview mirror on the front windscreen inside the vehicle.
- To use the auto wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, go to infotainment touchscreen → → Vehicle Settings → Greeting and enable Auto wiper.
- To use the intermittent wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, and disable auto wiper in infotainment touchscreen → Vehicle Settings → Greeting.
- The automatic wiper function has four sensitivity levels. The higher the lever, the higher the sensitivity. When using the automatic wiper function, change the sensitivity by adjusting the toggle based on real-time rain conditions. If the wiper reacts to rain too quickly, reduce the sensitivity; if the wiper reacts to rain too slowly, increase the sensitivity.



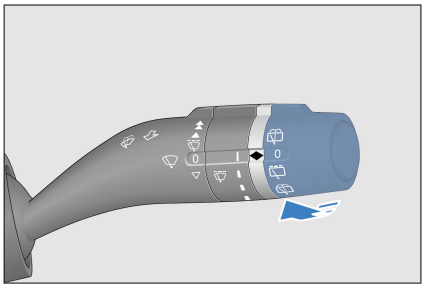
**Front windscreen washer**

- To clean the front windscreen, please pull the wiper lever backward (towards the steering wheel). In this case, the washer sprays water all the time, and the wiper works simultaneously.
- If the lever is pulled for less than one second, the wipers wipe once after the current action. If the time exceeds one second, the wipers wipe twice.

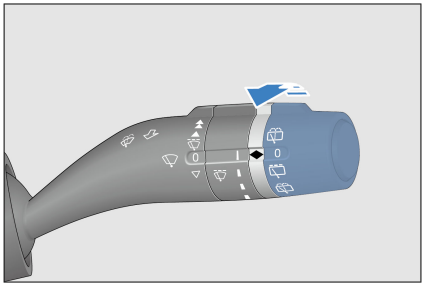


**Rear Windscreen Wiper and Washer**

- Rotate the knob at the end of the wiper lever to to activate the rear windscreen wiper, and to 0 to deactivate it.
- Rotate this knob to to simultaneously activate the rear windscreen wiper and washer.



- Rotate this knob to and release The wiper operates twice after washing fluid has been sprayed.



**REMINDER**

- Check and clean the wiper blades at regular intervals.
- Do not start the wipers while rain is starting, as the windscreen cannot be cleaned and rainwater mixed with sand and dust may instantly blur your view, affecting driving safety.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water, or another type of detergent, may damage the washer motor.
- If the boot is open or not fully closed, the wiper switch will fail to control the rear wiper until the lid is closed.

## Driver's Door Switches

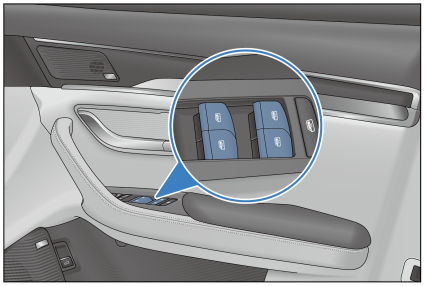
- The switch on each door can be used to operate the window.
- The vehicle power is ON, or the power-off delay limit is not exceeded if the vehicle power is OFF.

**Power Window Switches**

- The front left door is equipped with four switches to correspondingly control the four windows.
  - Down - press the switch
  - Up - pull the switch

**Automatic operation (If the Anti-pinch Function equipped)**

- Rolling down: Press a switch to the second notch and release. The corresponding window rolls down automatically.



- Rolling up: Pull a switch to the second notch and release. The corresponding window rolls up automatically.
- To stop the window halfway, gently push the switch in the opposite direction.

**Manual operation**

- Rolling down: Press the switch to the first notch and do not release. The corresponding window is rolled down manually.
- Rolling up: Pull the switch to the first notch and do not release. The corresponding window is rolled up manually.

**Anti-pinch function***

When the window is obstructed by a person or an object while rolling up, it stops and rolls down to allow for the obstruction to be removed.

**Initialisation of anti-pinch function***

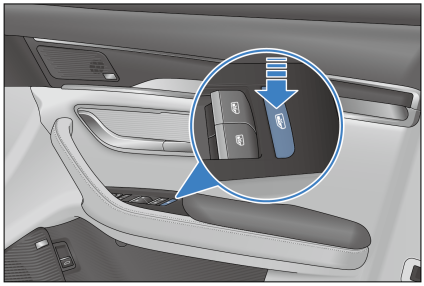
- If the constant power of low-voltage battery is disconnected during the window motion, the automatic window lifting function and anti-pinch function fail, and the indicator flashes. In this case, initialise the settings as follows:
  - Pull up and hold the window switch so that the window glass reaches the top position and stalls there for 0.5 seconds.
  - When the one-touch rolling up function is used, if the glass runs near the upper window frame sealing strip and is subject to certain resistance, it undergoes anti-pinch reverse movement.

**CAUTION**

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- Do not intentionally activate the anti-pinch function by jamming any part of your body into the window.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- Contacting a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

**Window Lock Button**

- When the window lock button is pressed, the red indicator of window lock goes on. Only the switch on the driver's side can control the window regulation of four doors, while the rear window switch cannot control the window regulation.
- Press the switch a second time. The red window lock indicator goes out, and the window switches on the rear row work normally.



**Central Locking**

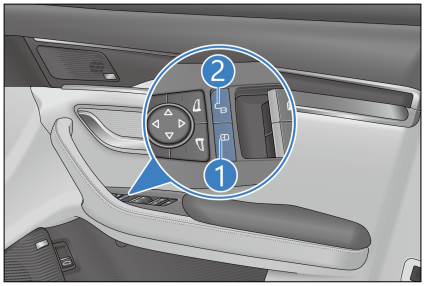
The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches to lock or unlock all doors.

**①Locking**

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.

**②Unlocking**

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.



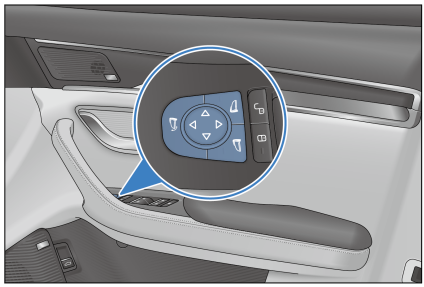

**Side Mirror Switches**

**Side mirror selection buttons**

- Left side mirror adjustment
- Right side mirror adjustment

**Side mirror adjustment buttons**

Press this button to adjust the side mirror lens to a right position.



**Electric Side Mirror Folding Button**

Press this button to fold in the left and right external rearview mirrors simultaneously, and press it again to unfold them.

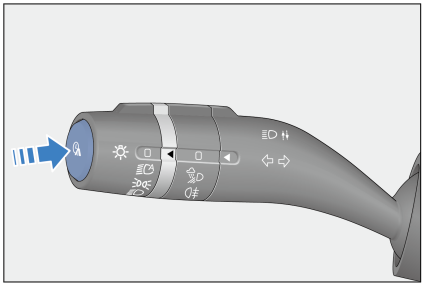
**REMINDER**

- If the side mirrors get frozen, do not operate the controller or scrape their surface. Deicing spray should be used.

## Milometer Toggle

**Milometer Switch**

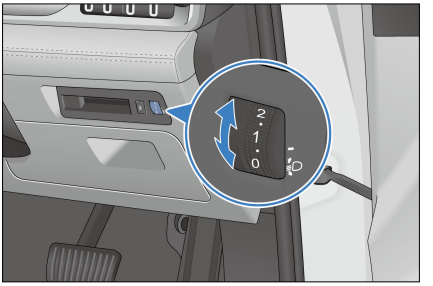
- Press the "ODO/TRIP" button to switch ODO -- TRIP A -- TRIP B -- HEV TRIP -- EV TRIP -- ODO. The instrument cluster simultaneously displays all corresponding mileages.
- Press and hold "Mileage 1" and "Mileage 2" to clear the mileage information.



## Headlight Adjustment

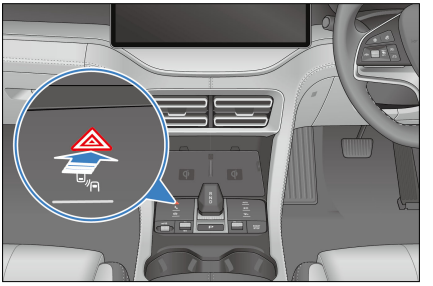
**Headlight adjustment switch**

- Press this switch to adjust the vertical beam angle of headlights. After the low beam is turned on, this switch works.
- If the headlight adjustment switch is in "0" position, the beam height of headlights is the highest; if this switch is in "5" position, the height is the lowest. According to the driver's needs, when the switch is adjusted to a certain position from 0 to 5, the beam height of headlights changes accordingly.




## Hazard Warning Light

After ⚠ is pressed, all turn signals start to flash, and the turn signal indicator on the instrument cluster flashes synchronously. Press ⚠ again to stop flashing.



# Steering Wheel Switches

### Steering Wheel Switches






**Left-hand buttons**

**Cruise switch***

- Turns the ACC system on or off.

**+/RES**

- Pull up the lever and press this button to increase at a certain speed; Press and hold it to continuously increase the speed.
- Activate the cruise control system and resume to the previously set speed.

**-/SET**

- Pull down the lever and press this button to decrease at a certain speed; Press and hold it to continuously decrease the speed.
- Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

**Distance -**

- Adjust the following distance to the vehicle ahead in the ACC following function and decrease one level.

**Distance +**

- Adjust the distance from the vehicle ahead in the ACC following function and increase one level.

**Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) button**

- Turning on or off the ICC (ACC must be activated first.)

**REMINDER**

- See detailed information about ACC in Adaptive cruise control* in Chapter 4.

**Custom button** 

- If the custom button is not customized, press this button to activate the default function: rotating the infotainment touchscreen. Press and hold this button to display the customization interface. Customized functions include rotating the infotainment touchscreen, photo-taking with vehicle data recorder* and locking*.
- If the custom button has been customized to a certain function, press this button to activate the function, and press and hold this button to display the customization interface to customize again or cancel customization.

**Panoramic view** 

- When the panoramic view button is pressed, the infotainment system enters the panoramic mode.
  - Turns panoramic view off in panoramic view mode, turns it on when it is not in the mode.

**Right buttons**

**Roller** 

Infotainment System

- Roll up the roller: increase the volume in a single step until the maximum volume (12 gears in a circle).
- Roll down the roller: decrease the volume in a single step until the minimum volume (12 gears in a circle).
- Press the roller downward: to mute.
  - The multimedia is in mute status now. The mute status can only be released by press the roller or the mute switch on PAD, and adjusting the volume cannot release the mute status.

Instrument cluster

- Roll up the roller:
  - Select the secondary/tertiary menu items upward in the instrument cluster menu mode.
- Roll down the roller:
  - Select the secondary/tertiary menu items downward in the instrument cluster menu mode.

**Left/Right buttons** 

Infotainment System

- In radio mode:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous radio station.
  - Press ▷ to play the next radio station.
- In USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music APP and other modes:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press ◁ to select the previous entry in the Bluetooth Call History and Contacts interfaces.
  - Press ▷ to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press ▷ to select the next entry in the Bluetooth Call History and Contacts interfaces.

Instrument cluster

- In the menu mode:

- Press ◁ to switch it to a left menu and its submenus.
- Press ▷ to switch it to a right menu and its submenus.

- Set the charging reservation time:
  - Press the ◁ / ▷ button to choose hour or minute.

**Phone button** 

- Press this button to make or receive a call. (The audio system is muted at the same time.)
- When the system is in a Bluetooth unrelated interface and Bluetooth is disconnected, press this button for the system to skip to the Bluetooth Connected interface. If Bluetooth is connected, press this button for the system to skip to the main dialing interface.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the Call Log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

**Voice recognition** 

- Press this button for the infotainment touchscreen to switch to the voice recognition screen.

**Instrument cluster menu/return button** 

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press Instrument cluster/Back to show the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- On the Bluetooth call screen, press it to end the call.

**MODE button**

- Selecting a mode: Press the Mode button to switch between media apps, peripherals, and pre-installed third-party audio/video apps.

**Horn** 

Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

**REMINDER**

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

**CAUTION**

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

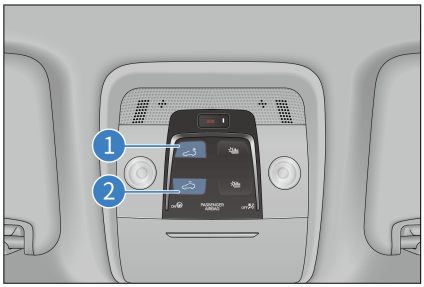
## Sunroof Switch*

The sunroof can only be operated when the vehicle is powered on or when the power-off delay has not expired.

**Opening the Sunroof**

- Press and hold the sunroof open button ① to manually open the sunroof. Release the button to stop the sunroof at its current position.
- Press the sunroof open button ① and release immediately to tilt the sunroof for ventilation. Press it again to automatically open the sunroof to the two-thirds position. Press it again to fully open the sunroof. Press button

① or button ② midway to stop the sunroof at its current position.

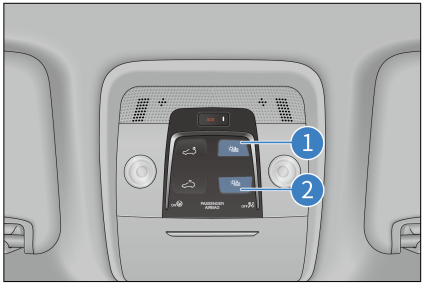



**Closing the sunroof**

- Press and hold the button ② to close the sunroof. The sunroof will stop if the button is released.
- If the sunroof has been initialised, releasing the sunroof close button ② immediately after touching it closes the sunroof automatically. For the sunroof to stop at its current position, press the ① or ② button midway.

**Opening the sunshade**

- Press and hold the sunshade open button ① to open the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade.
- Release the sunshade open button ① immediately after touching it. The sunshade opens automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, touch the ① or ② button midway.




**Closing the sunshade**

- Press and hold the sunshade close button ② to close the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.
- If the sunshade has been initialised, releasing the sunshade close button ② immediately after touching it closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, touch the ① or button ② midway.

**CAUTION**

- When opening or closing the sunroof sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain, to prevent damage.

**Sunshade linkage function**

When the sunroof is opened, the sunshade will be opened together with the sunroof.

**Anti-pinch**

If the sunroof or sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

**WARNING**

- Keep clear of the sunroof when it is opening or closing, or severe injury may occur.
- Passengers must refrain from sticking hands or their heads out through the sunroof. Otherwise, severe injury or even death may occur.

**CAUTION**

- Trying to open the sunroof in outside temperatures below 32°F

**CAUTION**

(0°C) or when it is covered in snow or frost may damage the sunroof or its motor.

**Initialization**

With the vehicle powered on, when the signal remains valid, and the sunroof is not initialized, try the following operations to initialize the settings:

1. Press and hold the sunroof closing switch to make the sunroof move to the fully closed position and stall for 400ms, and then the sunroof initialization is completed.
2. After the sunroof has been initialized and is fully closed, press and hold the sunshade closing switch to make the sunshade run to the fully closed position and stall for 400ms, and then the sunshade initialization is completed.

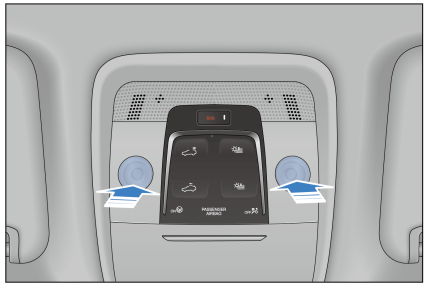
**CAUTION**

- During the whole initialization process, press and hold the sunroof/sunshade opening or closing button until the sunroof/ sunshade is fully opened or closed.

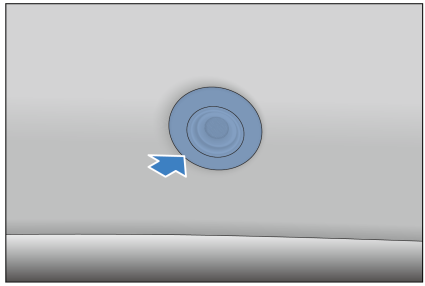
## Interior Lights

**Front/side interior lights**

- Front Interior Lights



- Side Interior Lights



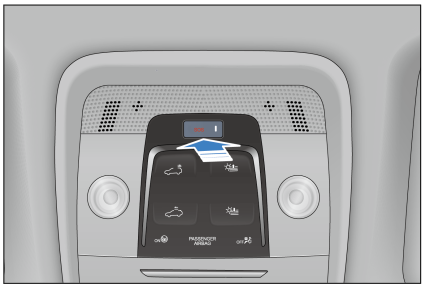
When the vehicle power is not OFF and the "DOOR" switch is turned on, if this switch is pressed with the door open, the interior light switches from high to low light, and does not go out. When the vehicle is powered off and the "DOOR" switch is turned on, the light goes out after a period of time if the door is opened. If there are other operations during this period, the timer will be restarted. (The user can slide down the status bar on the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the "DOOR" switch)

**Ambient Lights***

To control the brightness, colour and area of the ambient light, go to infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle Settings** → **Ambient Light**.

## E-Call Switch

E-Call refers to emergency call. Press down on the SOS button (duration: 1s⩽t⩽10s), and E-Call is triggered if this button is not pressed again within 5 seconds after the initial press.



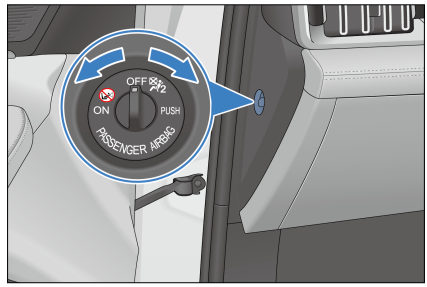
- If users press the SOS button by mistake, they can press the SOS button again within 5 seconds to cancel the call.
- If an airbag deploys or a severe collision is detected, E-Call is triggered automatically.
- Upon triggering, the E-Call system automatically makes an emergency call and reports the minimum set of data (MSD) to a public safety answering point (PSAP).

**CAUTION**

- If the SOS button is pressed and held for over 20 seconds, SOS is deemed to have permanently short-circuited (i.e. the button is stuck). Under this circumstance, E-Call cannot be triggered manually.
- E-Call cannot be canceled manually after being triggered. It remains active until PSAP hangs up. If PSAP cannot establish contact with the user after 10 consecutive attempts, the system enters a waiting period of 60 minutes for a callback.
- During the POST of E-Call system, the indicator flashes quickly at 2 Hz; when the E-Call system works normally without any fault, the indicator stays ON; during a voice call triggered by the E-Call system, the indicator flashes at 1 Hz; when the voice call ends, the indicator stays ON; when the GPS signal is weak, the indicator flashes slowly at 0.5 Hz, and stays ON when the GPS signal returns to normal; when the E-Call system detects a serious fault, the indicator remains OFF.

## Passenger Airbag (PAB) Switch*

- The passenger airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a passenger airbag switch.
- The switch is located on the passenger side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open.




- The front passenger airbag indicator is located on the ceiling.
- Check that the switch is in the required position.

- Enable or disable the front passenger airbag according to the use of the front passenger seat:
  - When the switch is ON, the front passenger airbag is activated. The front passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  come on, and "OFF" and  are off. The front passenger airbag deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.
  - When the switch is OFF, the front passenger airbag is deactivated. The passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  are off, and "OFF" and  come on. The front passenger airbag do not deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision thatmeets the necessary deployment conditions.

**WARNING**

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat with an activated passenger airbag. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury or death.
- When the front passenger seat is occupied with an adult, the passenger airbag switch must be turned to "ON" to always keep the front passenger airbag active.
- If the front passenger airbag remains active when the passenger airbag switch is off, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent damage to the airbag system, only operate the PAB switch when the ignition is OFF.
- It is the driver's responsibility to confirm that the PAB switch is in the correct position for the passenger sitting in the front passenger seat.

# 04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging Instructions ..... 96
Battery ..... 110
Usage Guidelines ..... 114
Starting and Driving ..... 129
Driver Assistance ..... 138
Other Main Functions ..... 176

# Charging/ Discharging Instructions

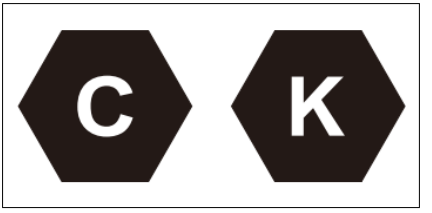
## Charging Instructions

**Charging Safety Warnings**

- Charging equipment uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- If you use any medical electronic device, such as a transplantable cardiac pacemaker or transplantable cardiac vascular defibrillator, check with the manufacturer of the medical electronic device for the impact of charging on the electronic device before charging, so as to prevent the charging from affecting the electronic medical device and causing serious personal injury.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment (away from liquid, fire, or heat sources).
- Before charging, ensure that the vehicle charging port, power supply socket, and charger connector are free of foreign matters such as water, and ensure that the metal terminals are not damaged or affected by rust or corrosion. Otherwise, please do not charge the vehicle.
- Use only certified charging equipment specifically designed for electric vehicles and consistent with local standards:
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports.
  - Uncertified products are strictly prohibited.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands and touch the exposed metal of the charging port or charging base.
- Do not conduct vehicle repairs during charging.
- During AC charging, please keep the DC charging port protection cover closed.
- Always observe the following charging precautions to prevent damage to the vehicle:
  - Do not touch the metal connection of the charging port, charger, or plug.
  - Do not shake the charger.
  - Do not charge or touch the vehicle in thunderstorm weather. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment and personal injuries.
- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charging port hatch before driving.

**Compatiblity of Vehicle and Charging Infrastructure**

The signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket,componets of the local charging infrastructure (charging station,socket) and on the charging cable.




The signs refer to standardized charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.

**Charging Precautions**

- AC and DC charging* can be carried out in any power supply position. To ensure safety, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging. The vehicle can not be powered OK during charging.
- To prevent the charging port cover from malfunction, do not open and close the cover repeatedly. It is recommanded that the time interval to open and close the cover is over 1 second.
- When the external power supply is cut off for a short time and then recovered again, BYD charging equipment automatically restarts charging, without the need for reconnecting.
- If the charging port hatch and charger are frozen, do not forcibly open the charging port hatch or pull out the charger.
- Precautions for avoiding damages to charging equipment:
  - Before starting the vehicle, make sure that the charging device is disconnected, as the charging device locking mechanism can cause damage to the charging device and the vehicle if the charging connector is not inserted in place and the vehicle is driven with the transmission gear engaged.
  - Do not close the charging port hatch when the charging port protection cover is open.
  - Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
  - Prevent the charging equipment from suffering any mechanical impact.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 55°C.
  - Do not expose the charging equipment to heat.
- Precautions before charging:
  - Do not open the charge port door forcibly when it is locked.
  - Make sure that the charging connector and charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
  - Hold the charging connector with one hand, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.
- Precautions during charging:
  - The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. To ensure the charging power, it is recommended not to turn on the A/C.
  - It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
  - It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging.Do not block the air intake grille.
  - It is normal that the charging power may fluctuate a short time as displayed on the instrument cluster when the battery is heated during charging.
  - During charging, the expected remaining time for a full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster. It is normal that the remaining time to full charge may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.

- During charging, battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalisation is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- During DC charging*, it is recommended to charge the battery to 80%~90%, and full charging is ok if time permits.

- Precautions after Charging:
  - Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
  - Remove the charging connector.
  - Do not forcibly pull out the charger when the charging port is locked for fear of damaging the charging port.
  - After the charger is unplugged, reinsert the charging port protection cover and close the port hatch to prevent water or foreign matters that may affect the normal use.
- Battery temperatures that are too low or too high can compromise vehicle charging performance.
  - In the case of low-temperature charging, battery thermal management can improve the lowtemperature charging ability, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased.These are normal phenomenons.
  - In cold regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle indoors with heating.
  - In hot regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a cool and ventilated place.
- Recommendations for improving the driving experience:
  - Charge the vehicle immediately when the SOC bar on the instrument cluster reaches the red area, for it indicates that the high-voltage battery is about to run out and failure to do so reduces the battery life.
  - To improve your experience, it is recommended that you charge the vehicle immediately after using it, as the battery is relatively hot and has better charging performance.
  - If the vehicle will not be used for a long time, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.

**General Charging Troubleshooting**

| Fault | Possible Cause | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged. | Charging card in arrears or faulty charging pile. | Consult card balance or contact charging station staff. |
| | Improper connection of AC charging adapter | Ensure the proper charger plug length and connection position of the charging equipment. |
| | Over-discharge of 12V battery | Connect the plug with a 12V power supplied from other vehicles. After the vehicle is started, the 12V battery starts to be charged. |

| Fault | Possible Cause | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| | Standard 230V 50Hz 10A grounded socket is de-energized | Confirm whether the overload protection of the power supply has been triggered. Please use another outlet. |
| | Vehicle or AC charging connector failure | Check for power system fault/failure warning light or message on the instrument cluster. If found, stop charging and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. |
| | The highvoltage battery temperature is too low or too high | Warm up or cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal. |
| | The high-voltage battery has been fully charged. | When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically. |
| Charging stops midway. | Charging cable is not connected properly. | Confirm whether the charging cable is firmly connected. |
| | Charging connection switch is pressed. | If the charging connection switch is pressed, the charging will stop. The charging connection should be connected again to start charging. |
| | Power failure | After the power supply is restored within a certain period of time, it is necessary to reconnect the charging adapter to start charging. |
| | High-voltage battery temperature is too high. | After the charging stops automatically, charge the battery after it cools down. |
| | Vehicle or charging pile failure | If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. |

## Charging

- **Inspection before Charging**
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Do not charge the vehicle when the metal terminal of the power plug/ outlet or the charger/charging port is

damaged or loosely connected due to rust, corrosion or ablation.

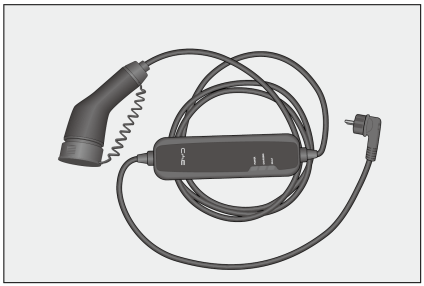
- When the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- Do not charge in any of these cases. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.

- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

**Using Mode 2 Charging Cable**

1. **Equipment**

- It consists of a power plug(complying with local standards), charger, plug/charger protection cover, a connecting cable and function box, referred to as on-board charging. The power plug is connected to the standard household power socket, and the AC charger is connected to the AC charging port of the vehicle.



- The power socket shall be a household socket conforming to relevant national standards to avoid circuit damage and tripping caused by high-power charging, so as not to affect the normal use of other equipment.
- The use of special AC circuit and power supply socket (230V, 10A) is recommended.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

**WARNING**

- The highest working temperature allowed for the product is 50°C, and store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the boot, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tyres.
- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never drop the equipment or pull it directly by its cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector.
- Do not use the charging equipment when the household power socket cable gets softened and the charger is damaged, like worn cables and broken insulating layers.
- Do not use the equipment when the charging connector or power socket experiences a breakage, crack or other exposed damage.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.

- Please contact a BYD authorized service provider and select an appropriate power supply as required for the charging equipment.

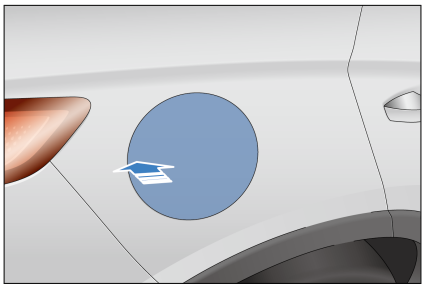
- Charging equipment grounding instructions: The equipment must be well grounded. The equipment is provided with a GND wire connecting the GND point of the equipment and the power plug. The power plug must be matched with a properly-installed and well-grounded power outlet.
- When charging with an on-board charger, please activate the anti-theft alarm.

**CAUTION**

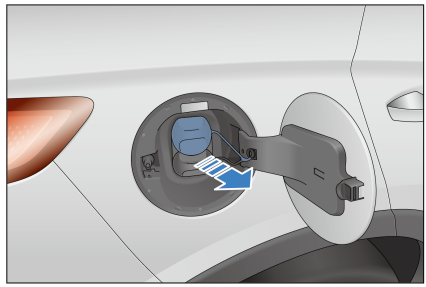
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- See the charging instructions for specific charging precautions.

2. **Charging**

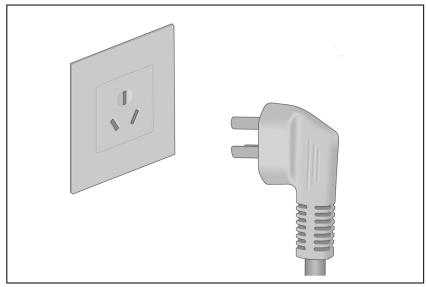
- Unlock the vehicle and open the charging port cover.
- Open the charge port cover:
  - Unlock the vehicle and press the charging port cover to open it automatically.



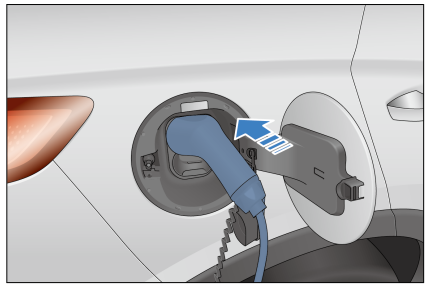
- Open the upper cover of the charging port protection cover and keep the lower cover closed.



- Connect the power supply terminal:
  - Insert the on-board charger plug into the household power outlet; then, the power indicator (red) of the charger functional box will stay on.



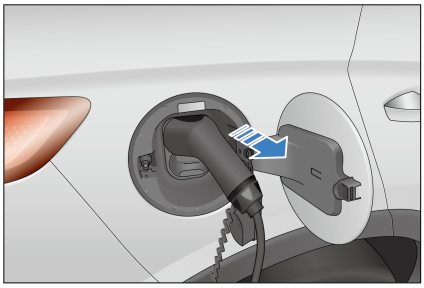
- Connect the vehicle charging port
  - Insert the on-board charger into the charging port and lock it securely.
  - Once the charger is connected properly, the charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster goes on. The charging indicator of the on-board charger will flash (green).



- In the charging process, charging parameters and the charging sign are displayed on the instrument cluster.

3. **Stopping charging**

- End the charging:
  - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
  - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - If the charging port anti-theft lock on the PAD is deactivated, the charger can be pulled after full-charged. When it is not full-charged, press the unlock button on the key or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby). Pull out the charger, and disconnect the power supply outlet.
  - If the charging port anti-theft lock on the PAD is activated, whether the vehicle is fully charged or not, press the unlock button on the key or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby). Pull out the charger, and disconnect the power supply outlet.



**REMINDER**

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlocking button on the key (during charging in the OFF gear)

**REMINDER**

or the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).

- When anti-theft is enabled, unlock the vehicle to release electrical lock of the charge port before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within 30 seconds, or the port will re-lock.
- The working mode of the charging port anti-theft lock can be set through the infotainment system. See “Control Function of Charging Port Electric Lock” in this chapter for the setting process.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see "Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port" in "Charge Port Anti-theft Lock".

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the vehicle charging port protective cover and charging port cap.
- Place the on-board charger into a bag in the boot for proper storage.

### Charging with AC Charging Piles

1. **Equipment**

- Charge the vehicle with DC charging piles in public places, which are generally installed in specific charging stations.
- Equipment specifications: Please view the relevant charging pile instructions.

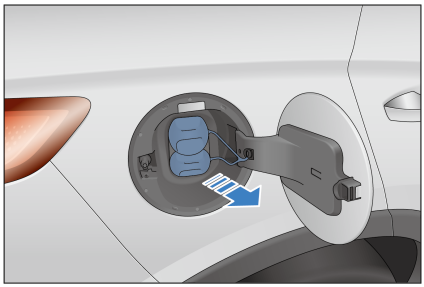
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

2. **Charging**

Connect the vehicle to a DC charging pile by the charging connector of this pile to begin DC charging.

Instant charging method:

- Before charging, power off the vehicle.
- Unlock the vehicle and open the charge port door and cap:
  - For the specific operation, refer to the relevant procedures for Household Portable AC Charging. Open the charging port hatch first and open the charging port protection cover from the top down.



- Connect the vehicle port:
  - Connect the charging connector of the charging pile to the charge port, and lock it securely in place.
- Operate the charging equipment to start charging.
- The charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster lights up.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

3. **Stopping charging**

- End the charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - After the instrument cluster displays that charging is completed, pull out the charging connector.
- After DC charging with a charging pile, properly place the charging equipment. Put the charging connector to the designated position of the charging pile.
- Close the charge port cap (from bottom to top) and the port door.

**REMINDER**

- During charging at a high/low temperature, it is normal that the battery thermal management performance may be affected by the A/C in the passenger compartment, causing an extension in the charging time.

**CAUTION**

- After charging, if the charging connector cannot be pulled out, please contact customer service personnel for the charging pile immediately.
- See the charging instructions for specific charging precautions.

**WARNING**

- See section "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.

**Smart Charging**

- The charging mode can be set on the infotainment system. To access the setting:
  - Go to the setting interface through the Smart Charging APP in the infotainment application list.
  - Go to the "Smart Charging" setting interface through (infotainment system) → New Energy;
  - Go to the setting interface by calling "Hi, BYD. Turn on the Smart Charging"; "Hi, BYD. I want to use the Smart Charging"; and "Hi, BYD. Please turn on the Smart Charging".
- Exit the Smart Charging screen by tapping the return key /home key or using intelligent voice:
  - Exit the setting interface by calling "Hi, BYD. Turn off the Smart Charging"; "Hi, BYD. Exit the Smart Charging mode".

**Setting screen**

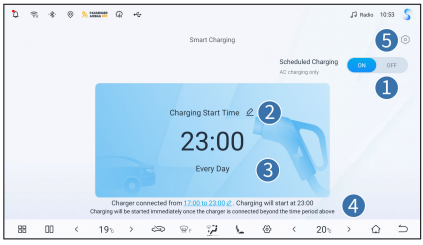
① Settings

② Reservation charging

③ Charging start time

④ Repeat cycle

⑤ Charging waiting time




- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, reservation charging is disabled.
- To activate the Reservation Charging, tap the Reservation Charging ① ON, set the Start time ② of charging and Period ③, and tap "OK" to save the settings.
- After successful setting of the Reservation Charging, a prompt of the charging start time is given by the infotainment system if the charger is connected or the power button is pressed within the charging waiting time to power off the vehicle; at this time, you can switch to Instant Charging as needed.
- Tap the Smart Charging icon ① to turn off the "Plug in charger" reminder and "Power off" reminder in the "Reservation Charging Reminder".

**REMINDER**

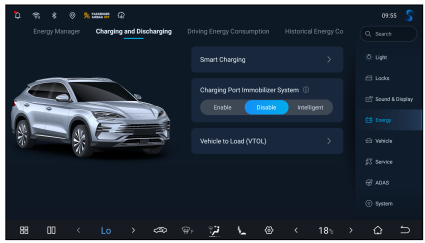
- The instant charging option on the reminder screen is valid for the current reservation only. To cancel all reservations, turn charging reservation off on the reservation setting screen.
- The smart charging function is only applicable to the BYD AC charging pile. If it needs to be applied to public charging facilities, please confirm that the facilities support vehicle-end reservations.
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process, the infotainment system still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed at the lower part of the instrument cluster.

**CAUTION**

- The smart charging (including Reservation Charging) function is only developed for AC slow charging equipment distributed by BYD. When using AC slow charging equipment not certified by BYD, this function shall be turned off; otherwise, the charging equipment may not respond, resulting in failure to reservation or immediate charging, resulting in power shortage of the vehicle and low battery.

## Charge Port Anti-theft Lock

In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft during charging and discharging. This function is deactivated by default. To activate the anti-theft lock function, go to (infotainment system) → New Energy → Charging Port Anti-theft Lock Settings and select Activate.




- In the Activate/Deactivate/Smart mode, users can unlock and unplug the charger in the following ways during charging:
  - Press the unlock button on the intelligent key when the vehicle is powered off.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's side door to unlock.
  - Press the central locking button under the driver's window to unlock.
  - If the vehicle is fully charged, the charger is automatically unlocked (only in Smart mode).

| No. | Electric Lock Anti-theft Mode Status | Vehicle door anti-theft lock status | Whether the vehicle is fully charged | Charging Connector Removable or Not |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Enabled | Locking | / | No |
| 2 | Enabled | Start | / | Yes |
| 3 | Smart / Deactivated | Locking | Yes | Yes |
| | | | No | No |
| 4 | Smart / Deactivated | Start | / | Yes |

- Unlock the charger during charging, the instrument shows reminder meaning that the electrical lock of AC charger is unlocked and the charging power is limited. The charging power is 0kW in this situation. Wait for 30s or lock manually to continue charging process.

**CAUTION**

- After unlocking the charger, it can be pulled out within 30 seconds. After 30 seconds, it will lock again.
- When the vehicle is fully charged after locking, the charging port anti-theft lock is automatically unlocked in the "Smart/Deactivated" mode, and must be manually unlocked in the "Activated" mode using the above methods.

**REMINDER**

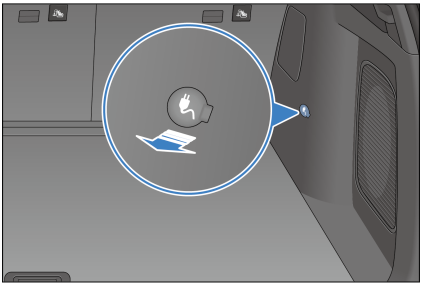
- If any abnormality or failure of the function is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Emergency Unlocking**

- When the electric lock fails and the charging connector cannot be unplugged, try to unplug the charging connector by manually unlocking the charge port.
- When the charging port hatch cannot be opened in case of failure of the actuator or low-voltage battery, try to open the charging port hatch by manual emergency unlocking.

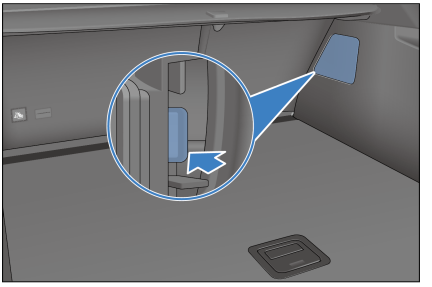
**Electric Lock Cable of Charger:**

1. Open the boot lid and find the lock cable on the right shield inside the boot.
2. Unbuckle the cable clip and pull up the lock cable to unlock the charger.
3. Reset the emergency cable latch after the unlocking is complete.



**Charging Port Cover Emergency Unlocking***

1. Remove the shield from the boot.
2. Manually push the actuator unlocking tab down.
3. Press the charging port cover to unlock.



**REMINDER**

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

## SOC Function

- When the vehicle runs in dual modes, the SOC balance function is available to reserve power for such operations as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the SOC fluctuates around the setting value.

- The vehicle controller can memorize the SOC setting value set last time.

**CAUTION**

- When the vehicle runs stably at a certain speed after the engine startup, a part of the torque output by the engine drives the generator to generate electricity and charge the power battery.
- If the difference between the current power and the SOC set value is large, it may take a long time to reach the set value.
- The SOC setting range may change depending on the vehicle state or the environment that the vehicle is in.

**SOC Setting**

- The State of Charge(SOC)means the state that the user expects the vehicle to reach during driving. Pull down the status bar on the top of the infotainment or go to (infotainment system) → New Energy → Energy Manager for SOC settings.
- Set SOC to the target remaining power
  - If it is convenient to charge the vehicle at the destination, it is recommended to lower the SOC set value to make full use of the stored electric energy to drive the vehicle and save fuel consumption.
  - If it is inconvenient to charge the vehicle at the destination, it is recommended to increase the set value to maintain the battery SOC level of the vehicle and improve the driving experience.
  - In order to ensure the proper driving and riding experience, the vehicle automatically adjusts the SOC set value according to the altitude and ambient temperature.
- Intelligent /forced power protection function setting
  - Intelligent SOC hold: give priority to fuel economy and consider the demand for SOC hold.
  - Compulsory SOC hold: give priority to SOC hold, and keep the SOC level as close as possible to the set value.

**Energy Regeneration Intensity Settings**

Go to the (infotainment system) → New Energy → Energy Manager to choose Standard or High mode of Energy feedback intensity according to driving habits.

- If the mode is not set by the user, the factory default setting is always maintained.
- The set value is memorized and becomes the default value after each power-on.

**In-Situ Power Generation Function**

When the SOC is lower than a certain value during parking, the engine drives the alternator to charge the high-voltage battery. During power generation, it is normal that the engine speed is different from the normal idle speed. The in-situ power generation is disabled until the SOC is equal to or higher than a certain value.

**REMINDER**

- During the in-situ power generation, the instrument cluster may show a slightly lower generated power due to the consumption of electrical appliances.

**Mode Memory Function**

1. In the case of high SOC, the vehicle is automatically switched to EV mode when it is powered on. Driving in this mode is highly recommended.
2. In the case of moderate SOC, the vehicle memorizes the last driving mode when it is powered on. The driver can manually select the required mode through the mode switch now.

**Power Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal**

- With the vehicle in P gear and HEV mode, when SOC is lower than a certain value, press the accelerator pedal to trigger the power generation function.

## Discharging Instructions

- The vehicle supports the Vehicle To Load (VTOL) function.

**WARNING**

- Do not touch the metal terminals of the discharging strip and the vehicle charging port during discharging.
- Stop the discharging device in case of abnormality such as odour and smoke during discharging. For discharge safety warnings, see Charging Safety Warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- To prevent the charging equipment from being rolled over by the vehicle, falling, and being trampled during discharging, do not place the equipment under the boot and the vehicle's front end or near the tyres.

**WARNING**

- Never drop the equipment or move it by pulling it directly by the cable.
- Do not use the discharging equipment when the discharging device, cable, or power strip is worn, the insulation layer is broken, or there is any other damage.

**REMINDER**

- Try to use this function when the SOC is high.
- The static power consumption of the vehicle will increase when the vehicle is powered off and the VTOL connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. It is recommended to remove the discharging/charging connector when the device is not used.

**CAUTION**

- Disconnect the discharging equipment refers to Charging Precautions.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.
- During VTOL, the engine is started when the battery level is low. Please do not use the VTOL function in a confined space or any other place adjacent to flammables and explosives.
- When VTOL discharges externally, it will turn off when the allowable discharge power is exceeded. At this time, please reduce the power of the equipment,

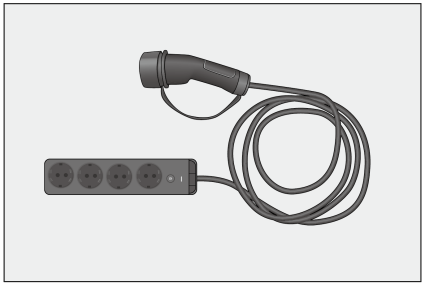
**CAUTION**

and plug/unplug the discharging equipment again.

**VTOL Method***

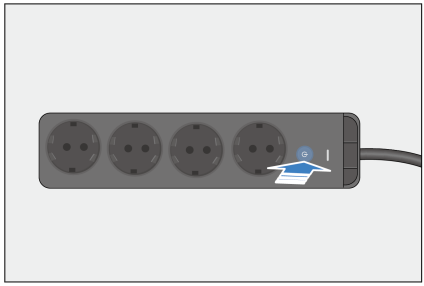
**1. Equipment Description:**

- Vehicle to Load (V2L)： It consists of a discharger, socket, cable, and discharger protection cover.



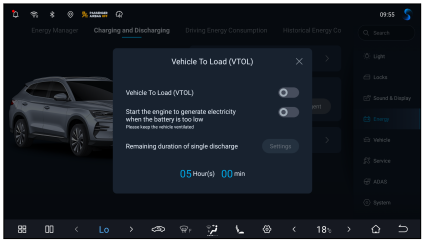
**2. Discharging Instructions**

- Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
  - For the specific operation, refer to the relevant procedures for ***P100***.
- Check before discharging:
  - Make sure that the VTOL adapter is free of any abnormalities such as shell rupture, cable wear, and plug rust.
  - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion. Do not discharge if any of the above conditions is found; otherwise, short circuit or electric shock so caused could lead to personal injury.
- Connect the discharge connection device:
  - Connect the VTOL discharger into the charging port reliably.
- Discharging starts:
  - Press the switch on the discharging outlet and wait for a few seconds. If the outlet indicator (red) stays on, the outlet can be used.
  - After the connection is made, discharge begins and respective information is displayed on the instrument cluster.



**3. Discharging Duration Setting Instructions**

- After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, the VTOL function is automatically activated. At the same time, the countdown can be observed on the instrument cluster and the infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of single discharging on the infotainment touchscreen is 5 hours.
- To set VTOL, go to (infotainment system) → New Energy → Discharging Settings.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharger, tap the Vehicle To Load button to turn it on or off as needed.




- When the vehicle is powered off and discharged to a low SOC, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch to enable the function if it is necessary to start the engine for continuous discharging.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered ON and discharged to a low SOC, the vehicle automatically starts the engine for power generation without setting.

- Tap Settings on the Infotainment interface to switch to the discharging duration settings to set the required discharging duration.

**CAUTION**

- The discharging function cannot be enabled when the discharger is not connected. Tapping the "VTOL" button makes it go on for a while and then go off, which is normal.
- When the discharging is started, if the power of the vehicle is too low and the engine cannot be started for power generation or the discharging time is set too long, the vehicle cannot guarantee that it can discharge according to the set time, so the external discharging function will be turned off in advance, which is normal.

**CAUTION**

**4. Stopping discharging**

- Stop discharging:
  - Press the switch on the discharging outlet.
  - The following steps are only operated in an emergency (not recommended).
- Disconnect the discharge connection device:
  - Press the unlock button on the key or the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby), and pull out the discharging connector.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door (see Household Portable AC Charging).
- Organising the equipment:
  - After discharging, put the VTOL equipment into the bag in the boot.

# Battery

## High-Voltage Battery

- The high-voltage battery is one of the power sources of the vehicle, which is located under the floor and can be recharged repeatedly. The high-voltage battery can be charged through the external power supply by means of household portable AC charging, AC charging pile charging, and also by the motor when the vehicle is being braked, coasting or the engine is started.

**CAUTION**

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered ON, the high-voltage circuit is connected.
- When the high-voltage battery of a new vehicle is in a normal state, the driving range of the vehicle in pure electric mode varies due to different driving habits, road conditions, and temperatures as well as the use of power-consuming devices or not.
- In order to prolong the service life and ensure the safety of the battery, the battery system switches the charging mode to the trickle charging mode when the battery SOC is high, and the charging time may be lengthened.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of the vehicle that has been used for a period of time has natural attenuation, and its pure electric range will be reduced. When the driving range of your vehicle in pure electric mode is shortened, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for checking. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of electric mileage is normal.

### High-voltage Battery Maintenance

- To keep the battery at its best, charge it fully with a AC charging adapter on a regular basis (at least once a week).
- When the vehicle is not to be used for more than 7 days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60%, so as to prolong its service life. When the vehicle is not to be used for more than 3 months, it must be charged to 100% and then discharged to 40%~60% SOC, so as to avoid battery performance worsening or even damage.

### High-voltage Battery Heating Function in Low Temperature

- In a low-temperature environment, the high-voltage battery heating system starts up and heats the battery to speed up the low-temperature charging and ensure the power performance and driving range of the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- The normal operating temperature of the high-voltage battery is within -35-60°C.
- Higher or lower operating temperatures of the high-voltage battery may prolong the charging time.

**CAUTION**

- In case of any fault of the high-voltage battery, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**WARNING**

- Non-professionals are not allowed to open the power battery pack. Units or individuals will bear corresponding responsibilities for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by unauthorized removal and disassembly of batteries.

**High-Voltage Battery Recycling**

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the BYD recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organisation to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

**WARNING**

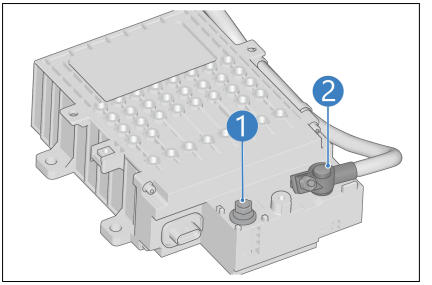
- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organisation or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorisation, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

## Low-voltage Battery (12V)

- The low-voltage battery used in this vehicle is a BYD self-developed lithium iron phosphate battery, referred to as the 12V battery. The 12V battery features a smart charging function. When the high-voltage battery SOC is sufficient, the vehicle can enable the high-voltage battery to charge the 12V battery, so as to extend the endurance of the 12V battery.

① Positive pole

② Negative pole



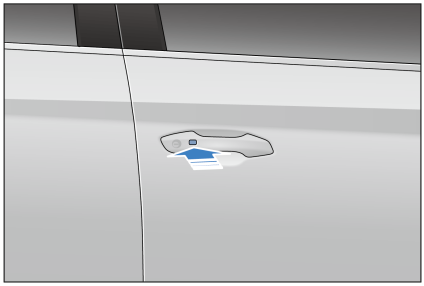

**REMINDER**

- When the vehicle is powered off for smart charging, it makes such a normal sound as when the vehicle is powered on.
- Make sure that all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed when leaving the vehicle.

**Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC**

**Wakeup by the front right door microswitch:**

- The 12V battery features the dormant/wakeup function. After long-term parking, if the vehicle locating and unlocking cannot be realized with the smart key, the 12V battery may be in a dormant state. Then, press the microswitch on the front right door handle to wake up the 12V battery. After the vehicle is unlocked, it can be used normally.

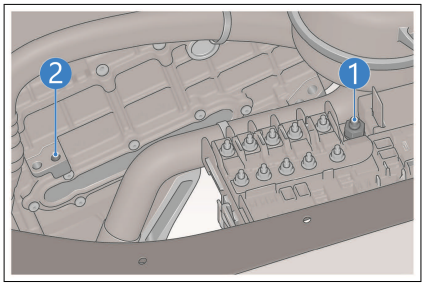


**Wakeup by Jump Start:**

- When the vehicle cannot be waked up and unlocked by the front right door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, a 12V power supply can be used to start the vehicle through two special cables for the jump start. In this case, the 12V battery SOC is low and the vehicle may become dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for more than 15 min to ensure that the 12V battery is fully charged.
- The jump start can only be carried out through the special interface of the front compartment fuse box. The connection terminals for the jump start are shown in the right figure.

① Positive terminal for the jump start in the front compartment fuse box

② Negative terminal for the jump start




If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above operations, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

**CAUTION**

- It is recommended that the jump starting be done under the guidance of professionals, as the space for operating the under-bonnet PDB is limited and circuit-based risks are present.

**WARNING**

- It is strictly prohibited to connect the vehicle with other vehicles for a jump start when its OK indicator is off; otherwise, the 12V battery may be damaged.
- When it is necessary to use a jump start for starting in case of low 12V battery SOC or failure of normal use, please read this part of the Owner's Manual carefully and strictly follow the relevant instructions.
- The 12V battery contains an intelligent control module. Do not disassemble or damage the battery without permission in non-emergency situations.
- Please disconnect the negative terminal of the 12V battery before replacing the parts and repairing and checking the vehicle.
- Do not clean the 12V battery with liquid to avoid ingress of liquid into the battery.

**Intelligent Charging**

- Low 12V battery SOC triggers the smart charging function to extend the battery endurance.
- In case of low high-voltage battery SOC, the vehicle may start the engine for power generation to enable the smart charging function.

- The vehicle supports the smart charging function, so it is unnecessary to disconnect the negative terminal of the 12V battery in case of long-term parking.

**CAUTION**

- Low 12V battery SOC triggers the smart charging function, resulting in a decrease of the high-voltage battery SOC or the driving range in pure electric mode displayed on the instrument cluster, which is normal.
- After the vehicle is locked, a small amount of fuel will be consumed and a small amount of exhaust petrol will be discharged when the high-voltage battery is low enough to trigger the engine power generation function.

# Usage Guidelines

## Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- Break-in is required for the powertrain. It is recommended to carry out it for the first 2,000 km (1243miles) in "ECO" mode, drive smoothly, and avoid high-speed driving. The following precautions can effectively extend the service life of the vehicle:
  - Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Avoid speeding.
  - Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km (186miles).
  - Do not drive at a single speed for a long time.
  - The use of HEV in the running-in period shall not be less than 50%.

## Trailer Towing

- **Towing capacity**
- The vehicle's towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. For a safer driving experience, avoid speeding and overloading. Please refer to the table below for specific parameters.
- The total trailer weight (including all cargo and optional equipment) and drawbar weight shall not exceed the limits outlined below:

| Item | 2WD | 4WD |
|---|---|---|
| Towing capacity (braked) [kg] | 750 | 1300 |
| Towing capacity (unbraked) [kg] | 750 | 750 |
| Max. tongue weight [kg] | 150 | 150 |

* Towing capacity: total trailer weight (including all cargo and optional equipment)

The max towing weight of 2WD model is 750kg. The width and height of goods, recreational vehicle, or devices should be close to the width and height of the trailer. If the former is over the latter, problems including insufficient power and quick power losing may be caused by increased wind drag.

A holder of C6 driving licence is allowed to drive a trailer if the total mass (including both the vehicle and trailer) is less than 4,500 kg.

**Tire pressure during towing**

- For towing a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep tires inflated to 270 kPa.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In these instances, the vehicle speed cannot exceed 100 km/h and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa above the tire pressure recommended for normal use.

**WARNING**

- The trailer tongue weight shall be at least 4% of the total trailer weight, without exceeding the maximum tongue weight stated in the table above. Unbalanced loads towards wheels or heavier loads at the rear may cause the trailer to sway, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Make sure no one rides in the trailer during towing.

**WARNING**

- The maximum uphill gradient allowed is 12% when a trailer is towed.
- Always ensure that cargo is secured in the trailer and cannot move. Dynamic load movement may cause loss of vehicle control, resulting in serious injury or death.
- To avoid potential accidents and serious personal injury, never exceed the towing capacity or maximum tongue weight.
- To avoid tire faults or loss of vehicle stability, never attempt to tow a trailer in case of a:
  - faulty tire ; or
  - temporarily repaired tire (such tires cannot sustain towing loads).
- Please observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. Do not modify the vehicle without permission.
- Do not tow a trailer equipped with an electromagnetic brake.

**CAUTION**

- Do not tow a trailer in the running-in period.
- Before towing, be sure to:
  - inflate tires to the specified cold tire inflation pressure;

**Precautions for vehicle towing**

- Do not tow a trailer in the running-in period.
- Before towing, be sure to:

- inflate tires to the specified cold tire inflation pressure;
- understand and observe all local regulations and legal requirements regarding trailers;
- adjust side mirrors to provide a clear rear view without significant blind spots;
- keep the vehicle horizontal when the trailer hitch is connected. If the vehicle is tipped up at the front and down at the rear, check that towing loads do not exceed the towing capacity or the maximum ball vertical loading weight/tongue weight;
- check that trailer lights and turn signals can operate normally;
- check that the trailer brake works normally;
- check that all towing components are securely tightened;
- check that all trailer hitch components, accessories, and electrical connectors (if any) are in good condition and properly connected. If any problems are apparent, do not tow the trailer;
- check that wheel chocks are available;
- check that trailer loads are evenly distributed;
- place heavy objects in the trailer near the axle whenever possible to reduce the interference with the combination vehicle in case of sway; and
- make sure the trailer cable does not contact or drag on the ground and has enough slack for turning.

- Please put away the trailer hitch when the vehicle is not used to tow a trailer.
- Starting to drive:
  - Start the vehicle smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and emergency braking. Especially on a slippery road, the vehicle may be out of control due to slipping.
  - Crosswinds or rough roads may cause vehicle sway, leading to difficulties in controlling the vehicle. In any situation, whenever you notice any slight sway of the vehicle, hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands and slow down gradually. Never attempt to eliminate sway by increasing the speed.
  - When the vehicle is unladen, try to avoid towing a trailer with loads. If this is unavoidable, drive at a low speed due to improper load distribution.
- Braking:
  - Sudden braking may cause slipping, bottom scratches, or loss of control.
  - The vehicle braking distance increases when a trailer is towed. Therefore, at least double the normal following distance.
- Overtaking:
  - Towing a trailer increases the overall length of the vehicle. Overtaking requires a longer distance to return to the original lane.
- Reversing:
  - Reversing while towing a trailer is more difficult than ordinary reversing, so great care and extra practice are required.
  - When reversing, hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Turn it left or right to make the trailer turn in the same direction. Always reverse at a low speed, and if possible, ask others for help.

- Turning:
  - When making a turn, keep the vehicle steady. Avoid bumps or sudden turns whenever possible. Activate turn signals before turning.
  - While turning, ensure a larger radius than usual to prevent the trailer from colliding with curbs, road signs, trees, or other obstacles.
- Parking on a grade:
  - Whenever possible, avoid parking on a grade. The grade shall be not greater than 12%. If parking on a grade is absolutely necessary, place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels:
    1. One person presses and holds the brake pedal;
    2. A second person places wheel chocks under the wheels on the downgrade side of tires;
    3. When chocks are in place, release the brake pedal and ensure the chocks can hold the weight of the vehicle and trailer (with AVH disabled).
    4. Shift the vehicle to P.

**CAUTION**

- Towing a trailer can negatively impact vehicle performance, durability, driving economy, and electric energy consumption.
- When a trailer is coupled, it is normal for the trailer's LED taillights to flash very slightly.

**WARNING**

- If parking on a grade is necessary, always ensure that all trailer wheels have been securely chocked. Failure to do so can result in serious damage, injury, or death.

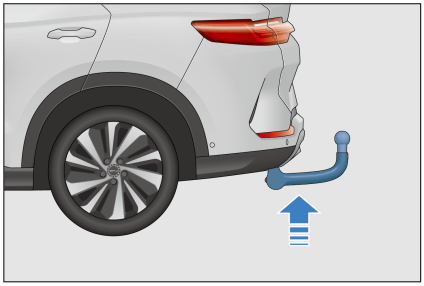
**Diagnosis for general vehicle towing faults**

| Fault | Possible cause | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| Failure to activate trailer mode | Vehicle speed: not 0 | Engage EPB, and activate the trailer mode again when the vehicle is stopped. |
| | Cable disconnected, or poor cable connection | Unplug the cable and reconnect it. |
| Trailer light fault | Poor cable connection | Unplug the cable and reconnect it. |
| | Blown fuse | Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. |
| Trailer indicator turning red | Accidental disconnection of trailer cable during driving | Pull over as soon as possible, and check whether the cable is properly connected; if not, reconnect it. If the cable is damaged, |

| Fault | Possible cause | Solution |
|---|---|---|
| | | repair it as quickly as possible. |

**Trailer Hitch Usage**

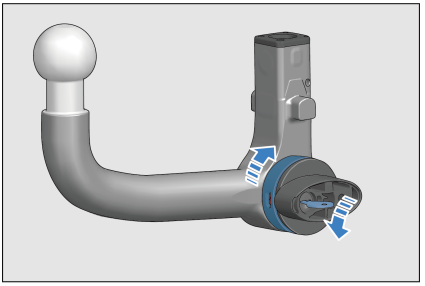
- Trailer hitch



- If the optional trailer hitch kit is selected by the user, an additional toolkit is provided for the trailer hitch.
- After use, remove the trailer hitch and place it into the dust bag. Place the bag in the toolkit to prevent rust.

**Installing the trailer hitch**

1. Remove the guard plate from the bottom of the rear bumper, and take out the hitch body from the storage bag.
2. Pull up the hitch housing dust cover.
3. Insert the key into the hitch's locking cylinder and turn it anticlockwise.
4. Press and hold the knob switch, while turning it clockwise to the red area.



5. Firmly grasp the hitch from the bottom and align the triangle marks on both sides of the hitch with the corresponding cutouts in the hitch housing.
6. Push the hitch into the hitch housing until the knob switch rotates anticlockwise by about 110° and automatically locks into the "Closed Position". At this time, the knob switch is turned to the green area.
7. Visually check that the hitch is fully inserted into the housing. Try pulling down on the hitch to confirm that the hitch does not drop.
8. Turn the key clockwise to lock the hitch, take the key and store it properly (preferably inside the vehicle).
9. Close the dust cover to prevent dirt and debris from entering the lock.

**WARNING**

- Be sure to use the BYD SEAL U DM-i trailer hitch when towing a trailer. Never attempt to attach a different type of trailer hitch.

**Removing the trailer hitch**

1. Insert the key and turn it anticlockwise.
2. Press and hold the knob switch, while turning it clockwise to the red area.
3. Remove the hitch, turn the key clockwise to lock the hitch, and then remove the key.
4. Place the hitch body into the storage bag and store it in a secure location.

**CAUTION**

- Do not grasp the locking cylinder because it needs to rotate freely.
- The key can be removed only if the hitch is locked. This indicates a proper connection. Do not use the hitch if the key is not removed.
- If the hitch does not lock into the housing, it falls out when pulled down.
- BYD recommends making a note of the key code. You will need this code if you lose the key and need to order a replacement.
- To maintain the hitch, regularly grease its surfaces with non-resinous grease.

**WARNING**

- Be careful when turning the locking cylinder. If it does

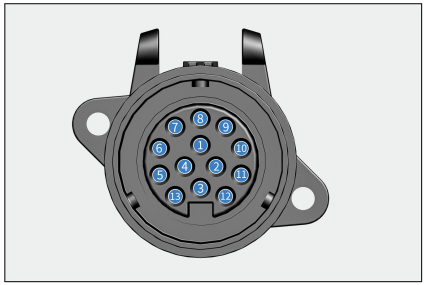
**WARNING**

not lock into the "Open Position"/"Closed Position", it automatically retracts to its original "Closed Position"/"Open Position" and may pinch the fingers.

### Driving Mode with a Trailer

#### Electrical connections

- All trailers are equipped with taillights, brake lights, side marker lights and turn signals.
- To provide power for trailer lighting, a built-in 13-pin electrical connector is provided for the hitch.
- When the vehicle is stationary, plugging the trailer plug into the vehicle electrical connector automatically activates the trailer mode.




| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | Left turn signal |
| 2 | Rear fog light |
| 3 | Pins 1-8 GND |
| 4 | Right turn signal |
| 5 | Right taillight |
| 6 | Parking light |

| | |
|---|---|
| 7 | Left taillight |
| 8 | Reverse light |
| 9 | 12V power supply - permanent |
| 10 | 12V power supply - switch/ignition |
| 11 | Pin 10 GND |
| 12 | Reserved (not connected) |
| 13 | Pin 9 GND |

**CAUTION**

- The driver shall ensure that all electrical connections and all trailer lights are operating normally before and during towing.
- When the electrical connection device is not connected to the trailer interface, do not directly clean this device with a high-pressure water jet. Doing so may result in water entering and damaging the device.

**WARNING**

- Use only the electrical connection device designed by BYD. Do not directly splice or connect the trailer’ s electrical circuit using any other method. Doing so can damage the vehicle electrical system and cause faults.

**Guide for activating trailer mode**

- Preparation before connection
  - Take out the trailer hitch from the toolkit in the boot and insert it into the reserved interface at the rear of the vehicle;
  - Shift the vehicle to R, and enable the towing assist function on the panoramic view screen;
  - Reverse the vehicle with the aid of the towing assist guide cursor in the reverse image, and make the trailer hitch ball close to the mechanical connecting device of the vehicle to be towed;
- Connecting the two vehicles
  - Connect the two vehicles according to instructions of the vehicle to be towed.
  - When stationary, the vehicle automatically enters the trailer mode after the cable is connected.
- Light detection
  - Automatic: Light detection automatically starts 15s after the cable is connected.
  - Manual: Tap "Light Detection" in the towing function interface of the touchscreen, and then automatic light detection starts after 15s.

**CAUTION**

- Do not connect/disconnect the trailer or cable before the vehicle stops, or hidden safety problems are caused.

**CAUTION**

- In the trailer mode, the maximum speed limit is 110 km/h.
- In the trailer mode, when the user opens the boot lid, it unlocks but does not automatically open.
- After the vehicle enters the trailer mode, automatic cruise control, ICC, automatic parking, emergency braking, lane keeping assist, automatic boot lid opening and some collision warning functions are disabled. Please exercise caution while driving.

**REMINDER**

- Unplug the electric signal plug from the trailer hitch to exit the trailer mode.

**REMINDER**

- After the vehicle enters the trailer mode, the driving mode is set to Comfort mode by default and cannot be switched.

**Trailer mode indicator**

- The trailer mode indicator  is displayed on the dashboard.
- It stays blue when the trailer cable connection is normal.
- It stays red when the trailer cable connection is abnormal.
- It is off when the trailer cable is not connected.

| Function | State | Lighting up | Indicator |
|---|---|---|---|
| Towing | Normal | Staying blue |  |
| | Abnormal | Staying red |  |

**WARNING**

- Always ensure that all trailer wheels have been securely chocked. Failure to do so can result in serious damage, injury, or death.

**Influence of trailer towing on range**

- Towing a trailer increases vehicle weight and drag. As a result, the driving range can decrease significantly. The trip planning function can adjust the range estimate based on the energy consumption in the historical towing (initial calibration value is adopted in case of first towing), and dynamically adjust it based on the energy consumption during driving.

**Trailer sway mitigation**

- When trailer sway is detected, the vehicle ESC applies the appropriate amount of braking to minimize sway.

  The ESP indicator  on the dashboard flashes. Pressing the brake pedal when the system automatically applies braking due to trailer sway does not cancel indicator flashing until the system becomes stable.

**Towing weight setting**

**Function Descriptions**

- The trailer weight setting function allows the user to select the corresponding trailer option according to the actual trailer mass. Under the condition of ensuring safe driving and not exceeding the maximum towing capacity of the vehicle, the vehicle power system matches the corresponding speed limit strategy according to different towing options (small objects, heavy objects).

**How to Use**

- After the trailer cable is plugged in, the multimedia central control screen displays the pop-up window "Instructions for use with trailer driving mode". Click "OK" to enter the drag function setting interface to select small objects, heavy objects and the corresponding weight range.

**Speed limit**

| Weight grading | Small objects | Heavy objects |
|---|---|---|
| Maximum speed limit (km/h) | No restrictions | 110 |
| KICKDOWN release speed value (km/h) | No restrictions | 130 |

**CAUTION**

- In order to ensure your driving safety, please select the trailer weight accurately, and the vehicle will adjust the vehicle power strategy and the upper speed limit according to the trailer weight.
- The towing weight must not exceed the maximum allowable towing weight of the vehicle.

# Fuel

**Fuel Selection**

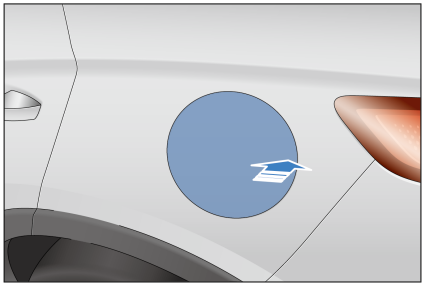
- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use 95# and above unleaded petrol with a required ethanol content of E10 and below.

**CAUTION**

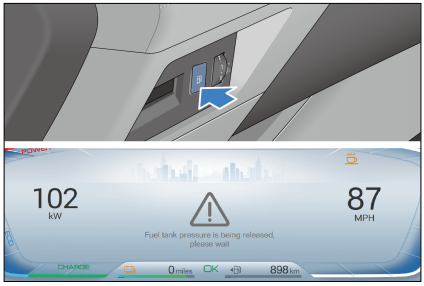
- Do not use leaded petrol. The use of leaded petrol leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior petrol reduces the service life of the engine.

**Refueling**

1. The fuel filler hatch is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.



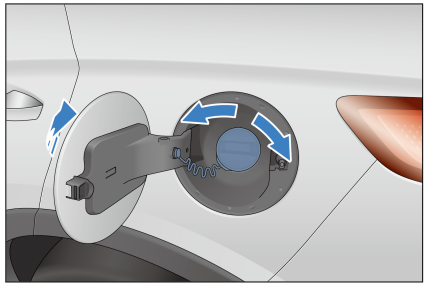
2. Press the refueling button. The instrument shows pressure releasing and reminds that please refuel after 2s. Then press the fuel filler hatch to open it.




3. Open the fuel filler hatch, and rotate the fuel tank cap anticlockwise to remove it. You may hear a "hiss" sound due to the release of pressure in the fuel tank.

- Connect the fuel tank cap to the fuel filler hatch with a tether to prevent inadvertent loss of the cap. While refueling, place the fuel tank cap on the bracket of the fuel filler hatch.

4. After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel filler hatch.



5. If the fuel filler cap has been left open for a long time and you need to refuel, close the fuel filler cap, then press the fuel filler button and follow the step ② to refuel.

**REMINDER**

Since the fuel is flammable and combustible, pay attention to the following matters during refueling:

- Turn off the engine and keep it away from heat, sparks and open flames.
- It is recommended to fill fuel outdoors.
- Immediately wipe up spilled fuel.
- Do not smoke during fuel filling, so as to prevent sparks or open flames, which are easy to cause combustion.
- Do not remove the fuel filler cap immediately after it is opened. In hot weather, if the fuel tank cap is suddenly removed, personal injury may be caused by the ejection of fuel under pressure from the filler.
- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.

**REMINDER**

- Check whether the fuel filler cap is tightened and whether the fuel filler hatch is closed in time after refueling.

## Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Following easy operations should be taken for extending the service life of the vehicle and saving fuel and repair costs: The followings are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turning, and emergency braking consume more fuel.
  - Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Use cruise control under proper driving conditions.
  - The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C as far as possible. In nice weather, it is recommended to use the fresh air mode for ventilation.
  - Make sure tyre pressure is correct. Insufficient tyre pressure causes tyre wear and fuel waste.
  - Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
  - When the engine is in a cold state, do not run at a high speed or drive with the acceleration pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after starting, so as to prevent damage to the engine.
  - Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
  - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.
  - Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
  - Do not always put your foot on the brake pedal if unnecessary, because this may cause premature wear, overheating, and consumption of a large amount of fuel.
  - Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Keep the vehicle speed within the economical range of speed.
  - Keep front wheels properly aligned, Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
  - Keep the chassis clean and free of mud. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
  - Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be

carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

**REMINDER**

- Do not coast in neutral gear.

## Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces.
- The glovebox, side glovebox, and seat back file pockets are designed to store small and light items, while the boot is used to store larger and heavier items.
- Too much luggage or improper loading may affect the performance, stability, and normal running of the vehicle and reduce vehicle safety.
- For loading luggage, the total mass of the vehicle body, all passengers, and luggage shall not exceed the maximum allowable mass.
- Therefore, please read the following contents before loading luggage.

**WARNING**

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's operating functions.

### Carrying Items in the Passenger Area

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seats' seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

**REMINDER**

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

### Loading the Boot

- Place the luggage evenly in the boot, and put the heaviest luggage at the front bottom as far as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.
- If the boot lid cannot be closed due to the carriage of large articles, the vehicle exhaust may enter the passenger area. To avoid carbon monoxide poisoning, please refer to Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning in this Manual.

**Roof Rack**

- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

**CAUTION**

- The roof rack of this vehicle is an exterior trim and is not allowed to carry goods and luggage.

## Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been subjected to accidents that may damage the bottom of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed. Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine should be limited to the extent that the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.

**WARNING**

- When the boot lid is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into the vehicle, creating a dangerous environment. If the vehicle must be started with the boot lid open, all windows shall be lowered and the interior air control system shall be adjusted according to the following prompts:
  - Select the fresh air mode.
  - Select the "Face level vent and foot level vent" mode.
  - Set the fan speed at "High speed" .

## Wading into Water

- Check water depth - it must not exceed the vehicle's lower edge - before driving into flooded areas.
- For driving in water, turn off the A/C before starting the vehicle, engage the low gear, and then keep pressing the accelerator pedal gently to drive over the waterlogged road stretch at a steady and slow speed. Do not release the pedal midway, or the exhaust back pressure is generated to suck water into the engine and causes serious damage.



- Do not park the vehicle in water, or reverse the vehicle and turn off the engine in water.
- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the discs and recover brake performance.
- Be careful when driving through deep water, as brakes may get wet.

**WARNING**

- If there is any water or mud on the brake disc, it may result in delayed brake reaction and extended braking distance, so attention should be paid to preventing accidents.
- Avoid emergency braking after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- No water ingress into the engine is allowed! If the vehicle is running on a low-lying and waterlogged road, prevent water ingress into the engine; otherwise, the engine may be seriously damaged. Such damaged is not covered by the vehicle's warranty
- Other systems like transmission, driving and electrical systems may also be seriously damaged upon submersion. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty either.
- In strong convective weather, try your best to charge the vehicle in sheltered places. If the vehicle is soaked or wades in water beyond the door sill, water may ingress into the high-voltage components. In such a case, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in time for proper detection and handling.

**WARNING**

- Do not drive on roads where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tyres.

**Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:**

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. This significantly affects the safety and service performance of the vehicle.
- The reduced ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance due to water in high-voltage components pose a high safety risk.

## Fire Prevention

**To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:**

- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - In hot summer, the interior temperature of the vehicle parked in the sun can be more than 70°C. If there are lighters, cleaning agents, perfume, and other flammable and explosive materials in the vehicle, it is easy to cause fires and even explosions.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.

- Smoking is not only harmful to health, but also may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.

- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular inspection.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not modify the vehicle's wiring or install any additional electrical appliances.
  - Installing other electrical appliances (such as high-power audio systems and lights) causes excessive wiring load, resulting in heating of the wiring harness and fires. Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.
  - Do not replace fuses with those beyond the rated specification of electrical appliances or with other metal wires.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused.
  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections. Do not park the vehicle in a place exposed to the sun.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - Carry fire extinguishers with the vehicle and regularly check and replace them to ensure safety. Be familiar with the use of fire extinguishers, so as to make rapid response to accidents.
- Always disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery during vehicle repair or maintenance.
- In case of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize losses.
  - Generally, there are early signs of a fire, such as abnormal noise and odour in the vehicle body. If any, pull over the vehicle immediately and actively put out the fire according to the actual situation.
  - Find out the origin of the fire. In case of any smoke in the front compartment, do not open the hood immediately (because this aggravates the combustion and spread of the fire due to air ingress. There are limited combustibles in the front compartment, so the hood shall be kept closed to control the flames, which is conducive to firefighting).
  - Dial (fire emergency number) to notify the authorities and insurance company. Call the insurance company to report the case, and ask the insurance company to deal with it on the spot.
  - If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

**REMINDER**

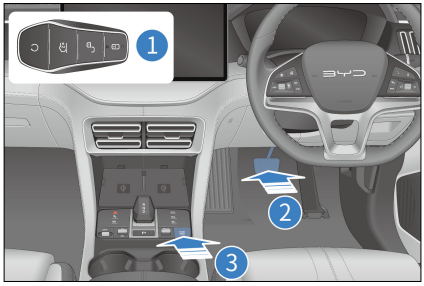
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of commercial insurance (fire loss, theft, etc.) is recommended.

# Starting and Driving

## Starting the Vehicle

**Correct method for starting the vehicle**

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all the unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Place the gearshift lever in the P or N position.
- Carry the smart key ①.
- Press the brake pedal ② and START/STOP button ③.




- When the indicator OK on the instrument cluster lights up, it indicates that the vehicle is ready for driving.

**The vehicle cannot power on when:**

- The vehicle cannot be started safely under the following circumstances:
  - After you press the START/STOP button, the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster. This means that the key is not in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - Even if the electronic intelligent key is inside the vehicle, the vehicle may not be started either when the key is on the floor, in the cup holder, in the boot, or in the right glovebox.
- If the quiescent duration of electronic intelligent key is over 2 min, the vehicle can not be started.

**Starting the vehicle in emergencies:**

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all lights and accessories.
- Shift to "P" or "N".
- The power mode is "OFF".
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button for more than 15s to start the vehicle.

**REMINDER**

- Do not touch the power button while driving.

## Driving

- During the driving, energy is recovered through regenerative brakes when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- Users can go to the relevant setting page via the touchscreen to select the corresponding energy feedback mode according to their driving habits.

- Standard: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers energy in the standard level, and the vehicle deceleration is in the standard level.
- High: When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers more energy, and the vehicle deceleration is high.

- Users can choose the energy feedback intensity according to their needs when releasing the accelerator to experience different senses of deceleration, and obtain different driving pleasures.
- The set accelerator release energy feedback intensity can be memorized. Even after the vehicle is powered off, the mode set last time remains valid when the vehicle is powered on next time.

**REMINDER**

- Do not set the regeneration intensity when driving the vehicle in high speed, as the driver may be distracted. This may distract the driver and lead to accidents.

- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- The power of the whole vehicle is weaker at low battery level than that at high battery level.

**Kick-Down function**

During driving, when the vehicle is going uphill or it is necessary to accelerate rapidly or press the accelerator deeply, almost fully pressing the accelerator increases the pedal resistance and triggers this function, so that the engine speed increases to provide greater power for the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- Higher battery SOC can ensure sufficient discharge power of the power battery, so that the engine can work normally and a better acceleration experience can be obtained.
- Battery fault, generator fault, and engine fault may affect the Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

**Safety Check Before Driving**

**Exterior**

- Tyres: Check tyre pressure and carefully inspect tyres for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear. In case of excessive wear or eccentric wear, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for four-wheel alignment and relevant inspection as soon as possible.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: check underneath the vehicle for leakage of fuel, oil, coolant or other liquids (except water droplets from A/C condensation) after the vehicle stops for a while.
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

**Interior**

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Braking: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.

**In the engine compartment**

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Brake fluid level: Verify that the brake fluid level is correct.
- Low-voltage Battery and cable: check the connector for corrosion or looseness, and check the shell of the battery for cracks.
- Fuel pipe: check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

**Check after starting**

- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: check for loose parts, leakage and abnormal noise.

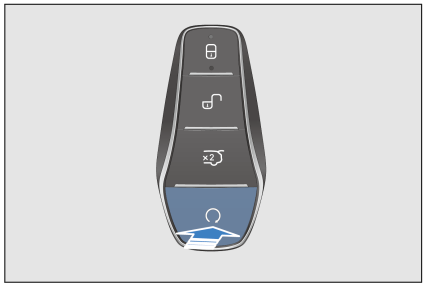
**Preparations Before Driving**

- Check your surroundings before getting into vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Make sure all doors are closed.
- Fasten the seat belts.

## Remote Start Function*

**Remote Starting**

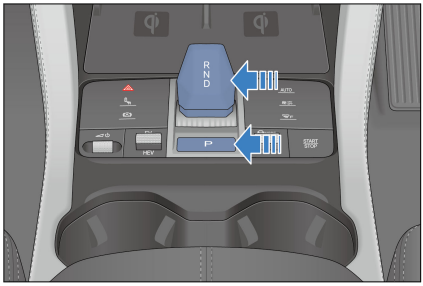
- Press and hold the start/stop button on the smart key to start the vehicle. After the vehicle is started successfully, the turn signals flash 3 times.
- After the successful start, press and hold the start/stop button on the smart key to shut down the engine and power off the vehicle, and the turn signals flash twice.



## Gearshift control panel

Gear positions are marked on the gearshift panel, as indicated by the figure.

- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- "N": Neutral. Use it for temporary parking or towing. However, the driver must ensure that the transmission is shifted to P before leaving the vehicle.
- "D": "D": Drive. Use it for normal driving.



- "P": Park. Press the P gear button to park the vehicle. The transmission should be set to this position when the vehicle is being shut down or started up. By pressing the brake pedal to start the vehicle, you can shift from Park to another position.
- If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position after it is released.



The transmission can be shifted to D/R only when the ignition is on.

Press the brake pedal to shift out of P or to D/R.

**CAUTION**

- To ensure safety, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of P gear and shifting into R gear.
- To avoid damaging the transmission, press the P gear button only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

**WARNING**

- If the engine or motor is shut down, do not move the vehicle after shifting to the N position to avoid accidents due to insufficient braking force.
- If the engine/motor is running and the vehicle is in R/D, be sure to press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle. Because even under idle conditions, the transmission can still transmit power, and the vehicle may move forward slowly.
- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- Never shift to "R" or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving, in order to prevent accidents.
- Do not drive the vehicle down a slope when it is in the "N" gear, even if the engine or motor is not running.
- To prevent inadvertent vehicle movement, apply the parking brake when the vehicle comes to a full stop and press the "P" button.

## Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

### EPB Switch

Make sure that the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)is engaged when parking and leaving the vehicle.




### Engaging EPB Manually

When the vehicle is not in P and EPB is released, press the brake pedal and engage EPB from the touchscreen. EPB applies appropriate parking force, and Ⓟ flashes and then stays on with a text prompt displaying "EPB engaged".

**CAUTION**

- The Ⓟ flashing indicates the EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal to avoid sliding. Release the brake pedal after the indicator Ⓟ stays on.

### Engaging EPB Automatically

- **Engaging EPB automatically when the ignition is switched off**
  - Switching the power from ON to OFF engages the EPB automatically. The indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster lights up.
- **Shifting into "P" automatically**
  - Press and hold the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and shift to P to automatically engage EPB. Do not release the brake pedal until the corresponding indicator on the instrument cluster stops flashing and stays on with a text prompt displaying "EPB engaged".

**CAUTION**

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise the vehicle may slip back.
- This function is designed to improve vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. To ensure safety, make sure that the transmission is shifted to P or the EPB is engaged before leaving the vehicle.

### Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

- When the vehicle is parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift to D or R from P or N to automatically release EPB. The indicator goes out, and a text prompt reading "EPB released" is displayed.

**CAUTION**

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The EPB system conducts power-up self-check within several seconds after the vehicle is started. In this process, the system does not respond to any function.

- When the vehicle is in D or R after start and EPB is engaged from the touchscreen, slowly press the accelerator pedal to a certain extent to automatically release EPB. The indicator goes out, and a text prompt reading "EPB released" is displayed.

**If EPB Release Fails**

- Release the EPB via PAD→Vehicle Health→Overhaul→EPB trailer mode when P switch fails.
  - If the EPB can be released, drive the vehicle to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance as soon as possible.
  - If it still cannot be released, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Emergency braking function**

- During driving, if the brake is blocked or fails and the ESC system operates normally, the Controller Deceleration Parking (CDP)can be used for emergency braking.
  - Press the P button to forcibly brake the vehicle, and press the brake pedal at the same time to achieve greater deceleration.
  - To stop braking as needed, just release the P gear switch.
  - After the vehicle stops, the EPB remains activated. To start the vehicle again, repeat the operation to release the EPB.
- Forced braking with EPB shall be avoided as far as possible. Emergency braking may cause vehicle drifting, sideslip or lane departure, resulting in accidents when the vehicle passes through curves, dangerous sections, traffic congestion and other sections or when the vehicle is running in severe weather conditions.

**EPB System Indicator**

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, the indicator (Ⓟ) on the instrument cluster stays on.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, the indicator (Ⓟ) on the instrument cluster lights up for a few seconds and then goes out.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system performs self-inspection. The indicator (ⓘ) on the instrument cluster lights up for a few seconds and then goes out. If it does not go out, it indicates that the EPB system may be faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.

**EPB Operating Sound**

- When the EPB is engaged or released, the driver may hear the sound of the EPB motor running.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.

**WARNING**

- In order to prevent the vehicle from sliding, the gear must be shifted to "P" gear before leaving the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is running, passengers are prohibited from operating the P gear switch to avoid serious accidents.
- When the EPB switch is pulled or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.
- Avoid using the EPB system to stop the vehicle. The emergency braking function can only be

**WARNING**

activated in case of emergency situations such as pedal brake failure or brake pedal blocked.

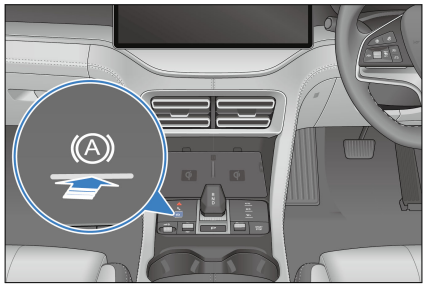
- Because EPB cannot exceed the physical limit of road adhesion, using the emergency braking function when passing through curves, dangerous roads, and traffic congestion sections, or driving in severe weather conditions may cause the vehicle to drift, slip or deviate, so attention should be paid to avoid accidents.

## Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

### AVH Switch

Auto Vehicle Hold (AVH)is used when it is necessary to stop the vehicle and wait for a long time, such as encountering a traffic jam on a slope or waiting at a traffic light. The AVH function is automatically triggered when the brake pedal is pressed to stop the vehicle (vehicle speed decreases to zero) on the premise that the vehicle meets the conditions for AVH standby status.

Press the AVH button to turn AVH on.



**CAUTION**

- To exit the activated AVH and set it to the standby mode, press the accelerator pedal or shift to P. If the AVH standby state are not met, it will be off.

### AVH Standby Preconditions (All Must Be Met)

With the AVH function activated:

- Driver seat belt has been fastened.
- The driver's door has been closed.
- The vehicle has been started.
- The ESC system has no fault.

**CAUTION**

- The AVH defaults to off once the vehicle is powered up. When AVH is in standby mode, is displayed on the instrument cluster.

### AVH Running Conditions (All Must Be Met)

- The AVH function is standby.
- The vehicle is stopped by the control of the brake pedal.
- After hard depressing of the brake pedal, the AVH function has been activated and the AVH indicator has turned green.
- After the AVH function operates for 10 min, it automatically requests to engage the EPB and the AVH returns to the standby condition.

**CAUTION**

- For AVH to be activated, all conditions of automatic parking function must be met.
- Under the condition of AVH activation and standy,when the gear is shifted to “R” ,the system automatically enters the slow-moving condition;when the gear is shifted from "R" to "D" or "N", the system maintains the slow-moving condition, in which AVH is deactivated. When the AVH button is pressed or the speed exceeds 10 km/h, it exits the slow-moving condition.

## Key Points for Driving

**Driving Instructions**

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads and try to keep the correct angle. To prevent tyre damage, do not drive over sharp-edged obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tyres.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage the wheel.
- Washing the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet the brake. Gently press the brake pedal for check after confirming that the surrounding environment is safe. If the braking force is not normal, the brake may be wet. Drive carefully and press the brake pedal gently while pulling up the EPB button.
- During driving, if the "START/STOP" button is pressed for more than 3s, the power output of the vehicle is cut off to realize emergency power-off. At this time, it is recommended to press the hazard warning light button, slide along the roadside, and gradually slow down until the vehicle stops by trying to press the brake pedal, press and hold P gear or hit surrounding obstacles at a low speed, etc.

**CAUTION**

- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running.
- Do not put foot on the brake pedal when driving. It may cause dangerous heating, wearing, and wasting of fuel.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- A large amount of water entering the hood may cause damage to the engine power system and electrical components.

**WARNING**

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the

**WARNING**

vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers from operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.

### Winter Driving Precautions

- Confirm that the antifreeze has the correct anti-freezing effect.
  - Use the type of antifreeze compatible with the original vehicle model and suitable for the ambient temperature to fill into the cooling system.
  - Improper antifreeze may damage the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cable conditions.
  - Cold weather may reduce the energy of the low-voltage battery. Therefore, the low-voltage battery shall be kept with sufficient power for winter startup.
- Confirm that the viscosity of the oil is suitable for winter driving.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - These can be found in the BYD authorised dealer or service provider and the motorcar parts shops.
  - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

**CAUTION**

- Do not use antifreeze or other substitutes as washer fluid, which may damage the vehicle paint.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender liner.
  - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fender liners. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fender liners.
- Have emergency tools or items available as prevention for difficult road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

### Engine Cylinder Cleaning

In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

1. When the OK indicator stays on, switch to EV mode, shut down the engine, and then shift to the N gear.
2. Activate EPB on PAD.
3. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning function.

# Driver Assistance

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- Based on conventional cruise control, the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system is designed to actively control the vehicle’ s speed for auto follow-up while cruising. This is done via a front mmWave radar and a multi-purpose camera which detect the vehicle's distance and speed relative to the vehicle ahead. The system switches between regular cruise control and ACC according to whether there is a vehicle ahead.
- Cruise speed and time interval from the vehicle ahead can be set by using the cruise buttons. You can set the cruise control speed within a 20-95mph (30-150 km/h) range, or set a fixed distance from the vehicle ahead to cruise at speeds between 0 (0 km/h) and 95mph (150 km/h).

**Status Description**

- ACC standby:
  - After the system is turned on, it is in standby mode by default and can be activated through the driver's active operation. However, it is also possible that the vehicle does not meet the conditions for activation. In this case, the driver should actively check the vehicle to make it meet the activation conditions.  is then displayed on the instrument cluster (cruise speed is variable).
- ACC activated:
  - The system is in a normal working state. The vehicle can run at a fixed speed or automatically adjust the distance from the target vehicle ahead for stable following.  is then displayed on the instrument cluster (cruise speed is variable).
- State of cruise control acceleration:
  - When ACC is activated, the driver can press the accelerator pedal to accelerate, and ACC stops working until the driver releases the pedal.
- ACC failure:
  - ACC fails and cannot respond any operations. The ACC fault state indicator  on the instrument cluster lights up. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**ACC Activation Conditions**

- The EPB has been released.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The boot, bonnet and all doors are closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- The ESC system is on, but not activated yet.
- The vehicle speed is less than or equal to 150km/h (95mph).
- Brake pedal is pressed at speed 0; or brake pedal is not pressed at speeds above 0.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

**How to Use**

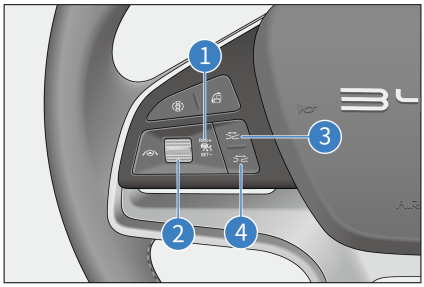
**ACC buttons**

① Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

② Multifunctional lever (pull up to increase or restore the cruise speed; pull down to decrease or set the cruise speed)

③ Reducing the following distance

④ Increasing the following distance




**ACC activation/deactivation**

- Press button ① to activate or exit ACC. (The system is in standby when activation conditions are met). By default, ACC activation by pressing button ① sets the current speed as the cruise speed. If the current speed is below 30 km/h (20mph), the cruise speed is set to 30 km/h (20mph).

**Resetting ACC**

- When the ACC system is on standby within the same ignition cycle, the system memorises the last speed setting. Push up the lever ② to restore to the stored speed prior to exiting the cruise system.

**Increasing/Decreasing target speed**

- When ACC is activated, toggle the lever ② to set the cruise speed between 30 km/h and 150 km/h (20 mph and 95 mph). Toggling the lever ② up or down increases or decreases target speed by 5 km/h (5mph). ACC following time intervsl can remember last operation and speed, long press res +/set- key cruise speed ±1km/h, short press cruise speed ±5km/h.

**Exiting ACC**

- During ACC activation, press the button ① again or the brake pedal to deactivate ACC and set it to the standby mode.

**Setting vehicle distance**

- The driver must select a safe vehicle distance.
- The system adjusts vehicle speed to keep a suitable distance from the vehicle ahead on the same lane. The following distance (four levels), in direct proportion to the vehicle speed, At each level, the following distance is in direct proportion to the vehicle speed. The higher the vehicle speed, the greater the following distance.

**Increasing/Decreasing speed with ACC active**

- The driver can adjust the cruise speed through the central control screen → ADAS → driving assistance → stepping on the accelerator pedal, set the switch status of the function, and turn off the default function of the system.
- When ACC is activated, the driver can accelerate by actively pressing the accelerator pedal. During the driver's acceleration intervention, the vehicle will respond to the driver's operation in priority. The driver assistance system will no longer assist the driver to control the vehicle speed, nor can it complete the deceleration. At this time, the driver should be responsible for driving safety.
- The current vehicle speed can be increased quickly by means of the accelerator pedal, and the setting value of the cruising speed can be increased when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed is greater than setting value of the target

cruising speed, when the accelerator pedal is released, the setting value of the target cruising speed is equal to the real-time vehicle speed when the acceleration pedal is released.

- If the target cruise speed is greater than 80 km/h, the cruise speed setting is not updated when the accelerator pedal is released after acceleration.
- If the target cruising speed is less than 50 mph (80 km/h) and the real-time speed after acceleration is greater than 50 mph (80 km/h), set the cruising speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If the target cruising speed is less than 80km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is < 80km/h, set the cruising speed to the current real-time speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

- If the lever④ is pulled down while accelerating, the current speed will be reset as the target cruise speed.
- Move the lever ④ upward to increase the target cruise speed. Press the button for a short time to accelerate 5km/h at a time, and press the button for a long time to accelerate 1 km/h continuously. If the vehicle speed is greater than maximum active vehicle speed or the accelerator pedal is continuously pressed for more than 5 minutes, the ACC function is disabled.

**Follow-to-Stop/Start**

- Controlled by ACC, the vehicle can stop when the vehicle ahead stops in normal driving conditions and resume driving automatically following the vehicle ahead if the stop is less than 30 seconds.
- If the stop time is between 30 seconds and 3 minutes, the driver needs to either press the accelerator pedal or pull up the lever ② to activate ACC.
- If the vehicle stops for more than three minutes, the ACC system will enter standby mode, with EPB engaged.

**Avoid overtaking in the slow lane**

- The function of avoiding overtaking in the slow lane is only effective when the ACC function is activated and the speed of the vehicle reaches more than about 90 km/h.
- The driver can set the switch state of the function through the central control screen → ADAS → driving assistance → avoiding overtaking in the slow lane, and the default function of the system is off.
- When the function switch is turned on, when the vehicle is running in the slow lane and the speed of the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane is slower than that of the vehicle, the system will actively control the vehicle to reduce the speed and try to avoid overtaking the vehicle in the adjacent fast lane.

**Slow down the curve**

- The curve droop function only works when the ACC function is active.
- The driver can set the switch status of the function through the Multimedia System → ADAS → Safety Assist → Curve Speed Reduction, which is off by default.
- After the function is turned on, when the vehicle is about to enter the curve in the ACC activated state, the system will reduce the speed to the appropriate speed in advance according to the curvature of the curve to assist the driver to pass through the curve, so as to improve the driving safety and comfort.

**System limitations**

- The front mmWave radar and multi-purpose camera are positioned in the front area of the vehicle. If their fields of view are obstructed, certain functions may not operate as intended due to interference. If any of these sensors is blocked or covered, ACC directly deactivates and informs of this on the instrument cluster. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
- Front mmWave radar sensors may have a transient function failure from limited detection if the vehicle runs under special conditions, such as circular ramps or tunnels, for an extended period. The function can be recovered by restarting the vehicle or driving on normal roads for a while.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. In such cases, the ACC vehicle may not brake as expected or may brake late.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for several seconds due to sensor vision limitations, possibly causing the ACC vehicle to accelerate automatically.
- Traffic flow and weather conditions, such as rain and fog, must be heeded for setting vehicle distance on the ACC system. After ACC is properly set, the driver should make sure that the vehicle can be decelerated to a complete stop at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires the driver to beware of the surroundings.
- The ACC system can only achieve limited braking instead of emergency braking.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
- The front mmWave radar and multi-purpose camera may be affected by vibrations or collisions, resulting in compromised ACC performance. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**Precautions**

- ACC is a comfort system rather than a safety system, obstacle detector or collision warning system. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
- ACC assists instead of replacing the role of the driver. The driver is responsible for abiding by traffic rules and keeping vehicle control.
- For safety, ACC cannot be activated when ESC is not turned on.
- The ACC is suitable for motorways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. The ACC system's vehicle distance meets the minimum distance required in driving environments in the country.
- Vehicle control is transferred to the driver if the accelerator or brake pedal is pressed with ACC active. As a result, the ACC system cannot keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that brakes or stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late

braking. In such cases, there will be no take-over request.

- In some cases, such as when the vehicle ahead is going too slow, when lane change is too fast, or when the safe distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, there is no adequate time for the system to decrease the relative speed, In this case, the driver must response. The system cannot give audible or visual warnings in every case.
- When enabled, ACC may apply braking if a vehicle in an adjacent lane is too close to the vehicle.
- Vehicles coming into the ACC vehicle's lane and within the detection range of its front mmWave radars are identified as target vehicles and prompt a response accordingly, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, four-wheeler, or pedestrian, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles. In such cases, vehicle speed must be controlled by the driver. In addition, detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- ACC cannot target vehicles with too small contact ratio, so the driver must keep control of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle stops as it follows a vehicle ahead, in rare cases, the system does not recognise the end of the vehicle ahead but the lower end of the target (for example, the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis or a vehicle bumper). In such cases, the system cannot ensure proper stop distance, so the driver must stay alert and be ready to brake.
- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot identify all the obstacles, so the driver must be alert to the front obstacles or other traffic participants.
- Changing the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis or changing the front licence mounting plate, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use the ACC system when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- ACC cannot be activated in special driving modes like tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain (if the vehicle is eqquipped).
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checking of front mmWave radars or the multi-purpose camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front mmWave radar, front bumper, front windscreen or multi-purpose camera has been removed.
  - Four wheels have been re-aligned due to wheel deviation.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted an system error.

**WARNING**

- ACC serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ACC to fail.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*

- On the basis of realizing the speed control and distance keeping function of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) System adds the function of assisting the vehicle to centre and keep in the current lane. ICC can provide the driver with longitudinal and lateral auxiliary control of the vehicle in the speed range of 0-150km/h, reduce the driver's driving burden and provide a safe and comfortable driving environment.
- When the function is enabled, the driver must always hold the steering wheel and control the vehicle when necessary.
- ACC maintains the vehicle at a constant speed or at a fixed distance to the vehicle ahead through longitudinal control.

**driver's motion departure warning**

- During ICC activation, the driver's continuous hands off the steering wheel will trigger the driver's motion off reminder;
- After the driver's movement is triggered from the three-level reminder, the vehicle will actively exit the ICC, slow down to brake in the lane, and light up the hazard warning lights.
- The following actions can interrupt the active parking behavior of this lane (the vehicle type needs to confirm the interruptible conditions):
  - Turn off the double flash or turn on the left and right turn signals;
  - The driver steps on the accelerator pedal and turns the steering wheel at the same time;
  - The driver cancels the function through the steering wheel button/ paddle;
  - The gear is switched to "P" gear.
- In a single power-up cycle, the ICC function will be disabled after three times of triggering the driver motion out of the level 3 alarm, and the function can be activated normally after the power-up and power-down again.

**Status Description**

- ICC standby:
  - The ICC system is on standby by default and can be manually activated. If the vehicle does not meet activation conditions, the vehicle must be checked until such conditions are met. Then, the icon is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- ICC activated:
  - The ICC system is operational. It maintains the set speed or automatically adjusts the distance from the vehicle ahead. Then, the icon is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- ICC fault state :

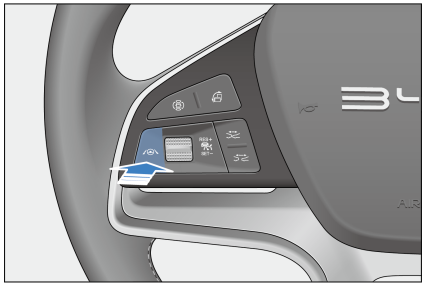
- There has been a failure in the system. No operation can be performed, and the ICC fault indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

**ICC Activation Conditions**

- The EPB has been released.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The boot, bonnet and all doors are closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- ESC system is turned on but not activated.
- The vehicle speed is ⩽150km/h.
- Brake pedal is pressed at speed 0; or brake pedal is not pressed at speeds above 0.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.
- Two-way lane lines are clear and the vehicle is at the centre of the lane.

**How to Use**

- Press the button on the steering wheel to activate or exit ICC. When activated, ICC sets the current vehicle speed as the cruise speed by default. When the current speed is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the cruise speed is set to 30 km/h (20mph).
- Refer to the use of ACC (see the previous chapter for details) for setting the cruise speed and following distance.



- Alternatively, use the ICC switch on the infotainment touchscreen to turn on/off ICC by navigating to → ADAS → Intelligent Driving (Note: This switch can only be turned off when the vehicle is in P). When the vehicle is just started up, ICC status before the last power-off is maintained.
- When the current speed is between 30 km/h and 150 km/h (20～95mph), press "RES +" or "SET -" to increase or decrease the cruise speed by 5 km/h (5mph) (holding down for continuous increase/decrease by 1 km/h (1mph).

**Precautions**

- On the basis of realizing the speed control and distance keeping function of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) System adds the function of assisting the vehicle to centre and keep in the current lane, so it is necessary to follow the precautions of ACC function when using it (see the above chapter for details).
- While ICC is activated, ensure that the vehicle is centred in the lane whenever possible.
- After the function is turned on and activated, within the speed range of 0 ~ 150km/h:
  - If there is no lane lines ahead, transverse ICC control is suppressed

and only ACC works. In that case, ICC working status indicator turns grey on the instrument cluster.

- If lane lines ahead are clear and recognizable, transverse ICC control is activated automatically. In that case, ICC working status indicator shows activated status on the instrument cluster.

- ICC is designed to assist drivers, not replace them. Drivers must therefore always maintain control of the vehicle and never remove their hands from the steering wheel for extended periods of time. Otherwise, the system is deactivated after prompting the driver to take control of the vehicle.
- ICC is affected by the weather, lighting and clarity of lane lines. Performance degrades significantly in situations such as backlighting, sunsets, snow-covered roads, and severely damaged roads.
- Do not use the ICC system on winding roads with sharp turns, icy and slippery bends, or under weather conditions, such as dense fog, heavy rain and heavy snow, liable to hinder the sensing operation of front mmWave radars or the multifunctional video controller.
- ICC cannot be activated when the vehicle is in any special driving mode* (Trailer/Snow/Mud/Sand/Mountain mode).
- Situations where ICC cannot be used:
  - The sensor is blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather conditions.
  - Active safety function is triggered.
  - Vehicle speed exceeds specified range.

**WARNING**

- ICC is only for driver assistance. The driver is fully responsible for maintaining driving safety.
- ICC may fail due to factors such as unfavorable weather and road conditions.
- Use ICC based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## Predictive Emergency Braking (PEB)*

The predictive emergency braking (PEB) system consists of Pedestrian Collision Warning (PCW)and Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)systems. PCW and AEB use the front mmWave radar and multi-purpose camera to detect vehicles and pedestrians ahead. Once a collision risk is detected, the system emits audible and visual alarms to urge the driver to take avoidance measures, while also increasing the potential braking pressure to provide sufficient reaction time for the driver. If detecting increased risk of collision, the system automatically applies braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.

**How to Use**

- To enable or disable PCW and AEB, go to → ADAS → Active Safety from the touchscreen. By default, the system is switched on when the vehicle is started.
- PCW gives alarms in forms of audio, text, and intermittent braking.
- When PCW is activated, the instrument cluster displays or depending on the severity of the situation, as well as a text prompt.

- When AEB is triggered, and a prompt message are displayed on the instrument cluster.
- In the event of malfunction, is displayed.
- If you disable AEB manually by pressing buttons, is displayed.

**PCW Activation Conditions**

All the following conditions should be met to activate PCW:

- This function has been turned on in **Vehicle Settings**.
- Vehicle speed is within the 16km/h-150km/h(10-95mph).
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.

**AEB Activation Conditions**

All the following conditions should be met to activate AEB:

- This function has been turned on in **Vehicle Settings**.
- Vehicle speed is within the 4km/h-150km/h(2.5-95mph).
- The EPB has been released.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The boot, bonnet and all doors are closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- The ESC system is on, but not activated yet.

**System Limitations**

- In the following cases, PEB system may be affected or give no response:
  - On rainy, snowy or foggy days, large water splashes, or exposure to direct sunlight or glaring lights, or significantly varying lighting conditions
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - Malfunction of front mmWave radars due to interference from other front millimeter-wave radar sources such as strong radar reflection in multi-story car parks.
- In complex traffic, the system may be unable to properly respond to the following circumstances:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.

**Precautions**

- The PEB system cannot ensure zero collision. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles or pedestrians. It may trigger unnecessary warning or braking action for well covers, iron plates or road signs.
- Make sure to drive safely and observe surrounding traffic conditions. The AEB system is not a substitute for normal braking operation in any event.
- Do not overly rely on the PEB system as this may result in severe injuries or deaths. The system is only an auxiliary safety tool. The driver must always keep a safe distance from vehicles

ahead, control the speed, and be ready to brake or steer away when necessary. The driver must keep control of the vehicle at all times and be fully responsible for safe driving.

- The AEB system is activated only when it exceeds certain speeds. Careful driving is always required, because the system may not be triggered correctly.
- The AEB system cannot work normally when the ESC function is disabled or the fault light is on.
- Whenever PEB emits an alarm, the driver must apply the brake based on current traffic conditions or turn the steering wheel to avoid obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- In the event of an emergency alarm, the system does not trigger the AEB if the driver has already reacted with awareness (e.g. when the driver turns the steering wheel or presses the accelerator pedal and brake pedal deeply).
- Front mmWave radar sensors may have a transient function failure from limited detection if the vehicle runs under special conditions, such as circular ramps or tunnels, for an extended period. The function can be recovered by restarting the vehicle or driving on normal roads for a while.
- Sometimes the surfaces of front mmWave radars or the multi-purpose camera are dirty or obscured by foreign objects, which can cause the sensor to become blind. At this point you need to clean the dirt and foreign matter.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, the driver must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents and severe injuries on its own.
- Under certain complex conditions, such as on winding roads, the pedestrian protection function may trigger unnecessary warning or braking.
- There may also be unnecessary alarm and brake intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- The brake pedal becomes harder if AEB is triggered. A large amount of hydraulic pressure will be required to push the caliper in a short time and there will be a sizzling noise.
- The PEB system is triggered only when the doors are closed and the seat belt is fastened. In the following circumstances, it will fail to work in the following cases:
  - Any door is not closed or it is opened when the vehicle is moving.
  - Any seat belt has not been fastened or it is unfastened while the vehicle is travelling.
  - The driver accelerates or decelerates rapidly or turns the steering wheel quickly.
- System performance may be reduced in the following cases:
  - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tyres
  - Unqualified tyres installed.
  - Snow chains installed.

- Use of a small spare tyre or tyre repair kit

- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the multi-purpose camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front mmWave radar or multi-purpose camera has been removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The position of multi-purpose camera change after a collision.
- Do not attempt to test the PEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- AEB cannot be activated in special driving modes like tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain (if the vehicle is eqquipped).

**WARNING**

- PCW and AEB serve as driver assistance functions only, so the driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause PCW and AEB to fail.
- Use PCW and AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) & Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)

Front cross traffic alert (FCTA) and front cross traffic braking (FCTB) detects vehicles crossing the driveway at the front through millimeter wave radars on both sides of the front bumper to alert the driver and engage the brake if necessary. At low vehicle speeds, when the system detects a risk of collision with a vehicle crossing the driveway at the front, it provides the driver with visual and audible alerts; in the event of an impending collision, the vehicle brakes automatically.

### How to Use

- To enable or disable FCTA and FCTB, go to → ADAS → Active Safety from the touchscreen.
- When FCTA is activated, the rearview indicator flashes and a chime sounds.
- When FCTB is activated, is displayed on the instrument cluster and a chime sounds, with AEB automatically braking the vehicle.
- In the event of FCTA/FCTB malfunction, is displayed on the instrument cluster.

### Precautions

- While the system provides assistance in monitoring front left and right sides, it cannot replace the driver's observation and judgment. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and drive properly and is fully responsible for the vehicle.
- When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the FCTA/FCTB system may not be able to provide adequate warning.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of the system, keeping mmWave radars on both side of the bumper in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other

obstructions need to be cleared right away.

- In addition, detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- Under some circumstances, it is difficult for the system to assist the driver, and detection may be affected or delayed. Possible circumstances include, but are not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from the side changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar reflection cross-sectional area is too small (e.g. bicycles, E-bikes, etc.).
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- The system does not work when:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - FCTA or FCTB is switched off.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - Four doors are open.
  - System initialisation has not been complete yet.
  - MmWave radars fail.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- FCTB cannot be activated in special driving modes like tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain (if the vehicle is eqquipped).

**WARNING**

- FCTA and FCTB are only for driver assistance. The driver is fully responsible for maintaining driving safety.
- FCTA may fail and FCTB may fail to work or respond promptly due to factors such as unfavorable weather and road conditions.
- Use FCTA and/or FCTB based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## High Beam Assist System(HMA)*

High beam assist (HMA) assesses driving conditions by using the multi-purpose camera sensor and automatically activates or deactivates the high beam accordingly at vehicle speed above 35km/h(22mph).

**Status Description**

- HMA standby:
  - HMA When the function is enabled but not activated yet, the icon is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- HMA activated:
  - After being enabled, HMA is activated when the light switch is in Auto, necessary lighting conditions are met, and the vehicle speed is above 35km/h(22mph). At this time, is displayed on the cluster.
- HMA failure:

- When HMA fails, is displayed on the cluster.

**How to Use**

- To enable or disable HMA, go to → ADAS → Driver Assistance from the touchscreen. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- With the function enabled, when you set the light switch to the auto lights position, the light meets conditions and vehicle speed exceeds 35km/h(22mph), the system automatically switches between low and high beams based on the current driving environment.

**Precautions**

- The HMA system is an auxiliary light control function. While it is recommended to use the system at high vehicle speeds, the system cannot completely replace the driver's judgment. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- Beam switching is suppressed if the vehicle is in a high dynamic state, for example when ABS or ESC is activated.
- HMA is disabled when the ambient light is too strong, or when the driver turns on fog lights or turn signals, sets the wipers to high speed, reverses the vehicle, or turns the light switch to a non-Auto position.
- Even when HMA is working, the driver must respond to possible situations where the HMA is triggered in error or fails to work due to unavoidable environmental factors and conditions. Typical situations are:
  - The driver's stick operation to switch to the high beam is prioritised.
  - The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
  - There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
  - There are highly reflective objects around (e.g., traffic signs on motorways, water reflection on the road surface, etc.).
  - The front windscreen is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

**WARNING**

- HMA serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause HMA to fail.
- Use HMA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Lane Departure Assist (LDA) System*

The lane departure alert (LDA) consists of lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP).

**Lane Departure Warning (LDW)**

- LDW detects lane lines up ahead through a multi-purpose camera. When the vehicle is traveling at a speed within 60km/h-150km/h (37-95mph) and the driver unintentionally drifts out of the lane, LDW warns the driver by an audible alarm, visual alarm, and/or steering wheel vibration.

**Lane Departure Prevention (LDP)**

- LDP detects lane lines up ahead through a multi-purpose camera. When the vehicle is traveling at a speed within 60km/h-150km/h (37-95mph) and the driver unintentionally drifts out of the lane towards the line, LDP activates and turns the steering wheel gently by providing reverse torque through the electric power steering (EPS) system, to prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane.
- If LDP activates and remains active for over 5 seconds, it emits an alarm at the 5th second, which lasts until LDP deactivates. LDP emits an alarm in the second activation or any further intervention, if it activates twice or more within a continuous period of 180 seconds and the driver does not turn the steering wheel during activation. For the third intervention (and any further ones), alarms are extended by at least 12 seconds. The alarm can be suppressed if the driver takes active intervention, such as making a turn or applying the brake.

**How to Use**

- To activate or deactivate this function, go to → ADAS → Driver Assistance → LDA from the touchscreen.
- There are three LDW modes: audible alarm, steering wheel vibration, and both.
- When LDW or LDP is enabled, the instrument cluster displays .
- When activated, LDW emits an alarm (audio alarm, optical alarm and steering wheel vibration), and the corresponding virtual lane line on the instrument cluster will turn red.
- When activated, LDP emits an alarm (audio alarm and/or optical alarm). on the cluster flashes twice, and the corresponding virtual lane line turns blue.
- In the event of malfunction, is displayed.

**System Limitations**

- The LSS may detect incorrect or no lane lines in complex traffic. The following situations may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system:
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
  - Dirty or fogged front windscreen, or blocked multi-purpose camera
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight in sunny days.
  - Unidentifiable road boundary with grass, soil or kerb.
- The function may be deactived automatically when the vehicle is on the narrow road to avoid the activated fuction from disturbing occupants.

**Precautions**

- LDW will be suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- LDW may be suppressed if the vehicle travels over lane lines or if lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt/snow.
- LDW may be suppressed if the lane is too wide or too narrow, if the number of lanes increases or decreases, if lane markings change suddenly on ramps or exits, or in situations of complex line arrangements.
- LDW may be suppressed on slopes or winding roads when the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead obscures lane lines.
- LDW may be suppressed when the vehicle jolts, accelerates or decelerates too quickly, or takes a sharp turn.
- The system operation may be affected if the windscreen within the visual field of the multi-purpose camera is cracked, if the front windscreen glass is dyed or coated in a manner that is not compliant with standards, if any reflective object is placed on the dashboard, or if any other object interferes with camera sight.
- For safety reasons, do not test LDW function on your own. The function will be interrupted if the multi-purpose camera is blocked by any object or exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Disabling LSS is recommended in the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style.
  - Severe weather conditions.
  - On uneven roads.
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines.
  - Incomplete lane lines.
- Situations that may cause recognition difficulty or late function activation of the multi-purpose camera include, but are not limited to:
  - The multi-purpose camera comes off, is loosely installed, or is blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The multi-purpose camera is partially or completely blocked.
- LDA cannot be activated in special driving modes like tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain (if the vehicle is eqquipped).

**WARNING**

- LDA is only for driver assistance. The driver is fully responsible for maintaining driving safety.
- LDA may fail due to factors such as unfavorable weather and road conditions.
- Use LDA based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## Emergency Lane Keeping Assist(ELKA)*

The emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) system detects lane lines up ahead through a multi-purpose camera. It also detects vehicles in adjacent lanes approaching from behind through rear corner mmWave radars. ELKA activates

and provides reverse torque through EPS to keep the vehicle travel in the current lane, when the vehicle, at a speed within 50 km/h - 150 km/h (31-95mph), is about to cross the road shoulder or may collide with an oncoming vehicle or an overtaking vehicle in an adjacent lane because the driver crosses a solid lane line.

**How to Use**

- To activate or deactivate this function, go to → ADAS → Driver Assistance → ELKA from the touchscreen.
- When ELKA activates, the instrument cluster display that flashes.
- When ELKA fails, the cluster displays .
- When ELKA is deactivated manually, the cluster displays .

**System Limitations**

- In a complex road traffic environment, ELKA may incorrectly or fail to detect lane lines. In the following cases, ELKA may not work or its performance may be significantly worsened:
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
  - Dirty or fogged front windscreen, or blocked multi-purpose camera
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight in sunny days.
  - Unidentifiable road boundary with grass, soil or kerb.
- The function may be deactived automatically when the vehicle is on the narrow road to avoid the activated fuction from disturbing occupants.

**Precautions**

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Pedestrians, animals, and specialty or specially-shaped vehicles
  - Unclear or incomplete lane lines.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the multi-purpose camera or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - The multi-purpose camera comes off, is loosely installed, or is blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The multi-purpose camera is partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- ELKA cannot be activated in special driving modes like tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain (if the vehicle is eqquipped).

**WARNING**

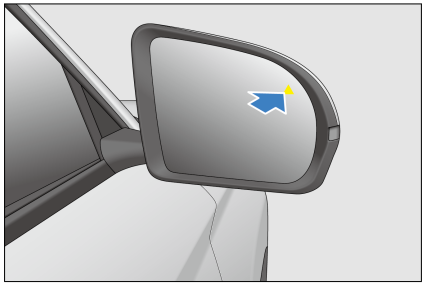
- LDA serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause LDA to fail.
- Use ELKA based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## Blind Spot Assist System

The blind spot assist (BSA) system includes blind spot detection (BSD), rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) and rear cross traffic brake (RCTB), rear collision warning (RCW), door open warning (DOW). It detects environment behind the vehicle through radars installed on both sides of the rear bumper so as to remind the driver of safe driving.

**Blind Spot Detection (BSD)**

- The alarm indicator on the corresponding external mirror lights up, when the vehicle is traveling at a speed within 15-150km/h (9-95mph) and rear corner mmWave radars either detect an adjacent vehicle in the driver's blind spot, or a vehicle quickly approaching from an adjacent lane. If the turn signal for the same side is turned on at this moment, the alarm indicator on the side mirror flashes to alert the driver of a risky lane change.



**Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)***

- When the vehicle is reversing at a speed no more than 15 km/h (9mph), the RCTA system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back through rear corner mmWave radars. After judging that a vehicle approaching from behind poses a risk of collision, RCTA activates external mirror alarm indicators to flash and emits an audible alarm, so as to warn the driver, reducing the possibility of collision.

**Rear cross traffic braking (RCTB)***

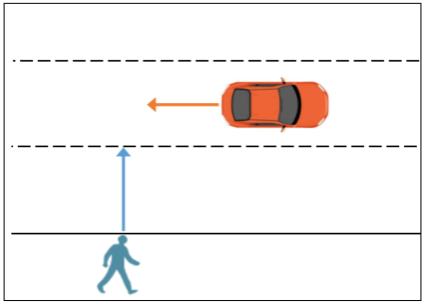
- When the vehicle is reversing at a speed no more than 9 km/h (6mph), the RCTA system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back through rear corner mmWave radars. If the system judges that a target approaching from behind poses a risk of collision, emergency braking is performed automatically.

**Function instructions**

- RCTB may be activated in the following senarios, whether or not it can be activated depends on a variety of factors such as the self vehicle, the target vehicle and the environment, we have not listed all the RCTB scenarios.
- When the system detects a pedeatrian crossing laterally at the side and rear when the vehicle is backing up at low speed, the system determines in real time whether there is a risk of collsion.

If there is a risk of collsion, the system will apply emergency braking to avoid or mitigate collision hazards.

- Limitations of the system: Due to the fact that the activation of the system is dependent on the environment, its own state and the state of the target, there is no guarantee that the system can active the emergency brake every time in this scenario.



**Rear Collision Warning (RCW)***

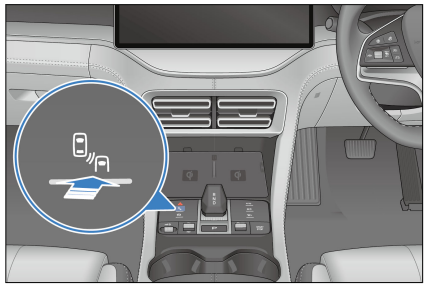
- At vehicle speeds between 5-146km/h(3-90mph), if rear corner mmWave radar sensors detect a risk of collision with a vehicle approaching too quickly from behind on the current lane, the hazard warning light turns on to warn the driver in that vehicle against a possible collision.

**DOW***

- DOW is realised with rear corner mmWave radars installed on both sides of the rear bumper. When the vehicle is stationary with doors unlocked, the system keeps indicators on side mirrors solid on to warn the driver if moving objects, such as bicycles or motorcars, approach from behind on an adjacent lane. At the same time, a prompt message is displayed on the instrument cluster. If the driver attempts to open the door at this time, indicators on side mirrors begin to flash and a chime sounds.

**How to Use**

Enable or disable BSD, RCTA, RCTB, RCW, or DOW in → ADAS → Active Safety → Blind Spot Assist.



When the blind spot assist system is disabled, no relevant indicators are displayed on the instrument cluster.

When the blind spot assist system is standing by, if vehicle conditions, such as speed or gear status, do not meet the requirements of any function, is displayed on the instrument cluster and blind spot assist will not be activated.

If the blind spot assist system malfunctions, is displayed on the instrument cluster.

When the blind spot assist system is active, is displayed, meaning that the function has been activated and can trigger alarms at any time.

**System Limitations**

- Under some circumstances, it is difficult for the system to assist the driver, and detection may be affected or delayed. Possible circumstances include, but are not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.

- Vehicles coming from behind are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- The target vehicle is obscured.
- Vehicles come from behind at a relative speed above 80km/h (50mph).
- The vehicle is on a curve which is too sharp, or is entering or exiting a curve.
- The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
- Rear corner mmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
- The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Targets that may not be responded include, but are not limited to, pedestrians and animals.
- The environment contains electromagnetic interference or other influences.

- The calibration of rear corner mmWave radars may be affected by vibration or collision, resulting in compromised BSA performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**Precautions**

While the BSA system provides assistance in monitoring blind spots of rearview mirrors, it cannot replace the driver's observation and judgment. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and drive properly and is fully responsible for the vehicle.

BSD may fail to adequately exert the warning function when the target vehicle is approaching from behind very fast.

The driver shall ensure that BSA can operate normally, keep the environment of rear corner mmWave radars in good condition, and timely clear any obstructions such as dirt or snow.

BSD activates an alarm when irrelevant targets at the rear sides of or behind the vehicle (e.g., large roadside repair signs, large roadside billboards, reflectors in tunnels and other objects with high radar cross sections) are mistakenly detected as target vehicles.

**WARNING**

- Blind spot assist serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- BSA may fail due to factors such as unfavorable weather and road conditions.
- Use BSA based on your needs along with traffic and road conditions.

## Traffic Sign Recognition System*

The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system recognizes speed limit signs through the multi-purpose camera and map*. It displays relevant speed limit signs of the current road on the instrument cluster and emits visual and/or audible alarms when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit (intelligent speed limit information (ISLI)).

**How to Use**

- To enable or disable TSR, go to → ADAS → Driver Assistance → TSR from the touchscreen.

- When TSR recognizes the current traffic sign, the instrument cluster displays 

.
- When TSR is unsure whether the speed limit value currently recognized is suitable for the current road environment, the cluster displays 

.
- When TSR experiences reduced performance, the cluster displays 

.
- When TSR experiences reduced performance and is unsure whether the speed limit value currently recognized is suitable for the current road environment, the cluster displays 

.
- If the TSR system malfunctions, The cluster displays 

.
- When TSR is disabled manually, the cluster displays 
.
- The specific numbers displayed in the indicators depend on the actual traffic signs.
- TSR features a power-off memory function. When the vehicle is powered on again, TSR restores the speed limit state and value before the last power-off.

**Precautions**

- The traffic sign recognition system can identify speed limit signs only, and will not control speed. The control over the vehicle always vests in the driver. Please drive properly.
- Weight limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may mistakenly be identified as speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognise the sign completely or clearly.
- TSR performance depends on weather conditions, lighting, and sign visibility. The system may fail to or incorrectly identify the sign at night or sunset, in rainy, foggy, hazy, snowy or dusty environment, when light is coming from the back of the vehicle, or when there is a sudden change in lighting.
- In case there is a collision or the camera sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

**WARNING**

- TSR serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause TSR to fail or lead to late alarms.
- Use TSR based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*

- The Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) system integrates ACC and TSR. With ISLC enabled, if the vehicle speed exceeds the value on a recognized speed limit sign, ISLC issues a prompt about whether to adjust the ACC cruise speed to the recognized speed limit.

After confirmation (done by pulling down the ACC speed control lever) from the driver, ISLC automatically sets the ACC cruise speed to the recognized speed limit.

- This function is accessible at the 20-95 mph (30-150 km/h) range of speed.

**How to Use**

- To enable or disable ISLC, go to → ADAS → Driver Assistance → TSR → ISLC from the touchscreen.
- When the TSR system is disabled, the ISLC switch is greyed out and unusable. ISLC is turned off at this time. The ISLC switch will be usable after the TSR system is enabled again.
- ISLC can be activated provided that ACC is active.

**Precautions**

- ISLC is only for driver assistance. The driver must always maintain control of the vehicle.
- ISLC performance is affected by weather, lighting conditions and legibility of road signs. Conditions such as night, backlighting, sunset, rain, fog, haze, snow and ice cover, surface dust, and sudden changes in brightness may result in reduced recognition capability or failure to recognize speed limit signs.
- As ISLC integrates ACC and TSR, follow precautions relevant to ACC and TSR while using ISLC.

**WARNING**

- ISLC serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.

**WARNING**

- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ISLC to fail or lead to late alarms.
- Use ISLC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Driver Attention Warning system

Driver attention warning (DAW) system recognizes the level of the driver fatigue based on the state of the driver's handling of the vehicle, such as steering wheel angle, braking, gearing and lane changing. When it recognizes the driver is in a state of fatigue, it will remind the driver through the instrument pop-up window and voice made to improve driving safety. The driver attention warning system is on by default after every power-up.

**How to Use**

With the vehicle powered on, set the warning in → Driving Assist → Driver Attention Warning (DAW). For safety considerations, the setting is valid on the current trip only, and will revert to the default mode on the next trip.

**CAUTION**

- The driver attention warning system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. It cannot completely replace the driver's subjective observation and judgment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times, complying with all road

**CAUTION**

laws and regulations, and taking full responsibility for the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- The driver should pull over the vehicle as soon as possible when feeling tired.

## Child Presence Detection (CPD)

After the vehicle is powered off, child presence detection is performed if any door is opened and then all doors are closed or locked. If child presence is detected, an alarm is given in the form of light flashing and honking. The A/C will be switched on soon after. To cancel the alarm, unlock or open any door.

### How to Use

- For setting, go to "Child Presence Detection" via → Vehicle → Cabin Perception from the touchscreen.
- Three options are provided: OFF, ON, and Delay.
- CPD is enabled by default when the vehicle is powered on, but the driver can manually disable it or delay the activation of "alarm and intervention" measures. Tap OFF to deactivate the alarm in this trip; Tap Delay to extend the alarm (for five minutes) in this trip.

### System Response

- If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered down and locked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 90 seconds and will last for about six seconds.
- If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered down and doors are closed (without locking the vehicle) , the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 300 seconds and will last for about six seconds.
- If the alarm is not canceled,the alarm will be upgraded(light flashing and honking) within 90s after the initial alarm (flashing and whistling), lasting for about 25 minutes;
- The A/C will be switched on three minutes after alarm escalation if it is not canceled, and will keep running for about 30 minutes.

**CAUTION**

- Misidentification or false alarm could happen.
- The alarm may be given for adults, children, pets, or other lives detected.
- The alarm cannot be canceled by unlocking the vehicle from the app.
- The system may not be able to trigger an alarm or switch on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at high SOC is recommended.

**WARNING**

- While light flashing, honking, app message prompts, and A/C operation reduces the harm to the child(ren) in the vehicle, they cannot completely prevent harms.
- When a reminder is provided, check whether any child has been locked inside the vehicle promptly to avoid further harms.

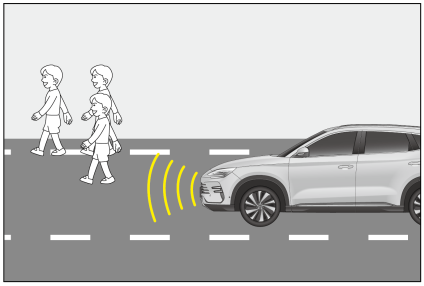
### Icons and pop-ups

| Vehicle Status Light | Pop-up window | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
|  |  | Deactivating Child Presence Detection |
|  |  | Child Presence Detection (CPD) System fault |

## Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)*

AVAS means that a warning sound is made to pedestrians in the vicinity of the vehicle when the vehicle is traveling at a low speed.

- When driving forward:
  - The broadcast volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0km/h<V≤20km/h (0mph<V≤12mph).
  - The broadcast volume decreases with vehicle speed in the range of 20km/h<V≤30km/h (12mph<V≤19mph).



- If the vehicle speed is above 30 km/h (19mph), the warning sound stops automatically.
- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced prompt sound when moving in reverse.

**How to Use**

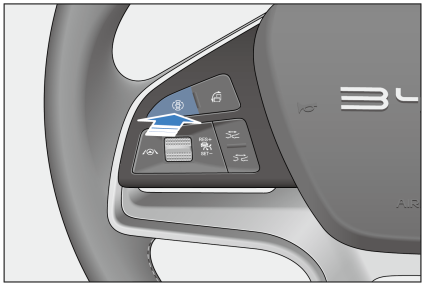
The system is enabled by factory default.

**WARNING**

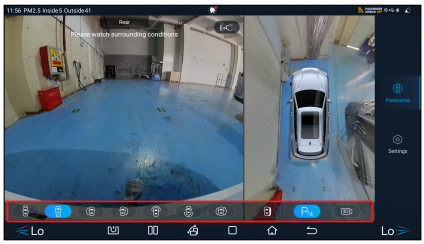
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the vehicle approaching, decreasing vehicle safety.
- If the AVAS prompt sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open a window, then drive in R gear and check whether you can hear an audible prompt from the front of the vehicle. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to deal with it.

## Panoramic View System*

When the vehicle is powered up, the driver can access the panoramic view by pressing the panorama button on the steering wheel, or by tapping the vehicle image button on the display. When the R gear is engaged, the panoramic view is displayed automatically.



- Landscape mode:
- Tap the front, rear, right or left area of the vehicle icon on the left side to display a single view of the front, rear, right or left view of the vehicle in the right image area. In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a 180° perspective displayed in full screen. Tap the radar icon in the panoramic view to turn on the radar display, and tap it again to turn off the radar display. When the radar display is enabled, a warning is displayed as the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.



- Portrait mode:
- Tap any two of the front, rear, right, and left areas of the vehicle icon in the lower left section. Views of the two selected areas are displayed in the upper and lower right image section. Tap the vehicle image switching button in the lower left corner to switch between transparent and nontransparent vehicle images. After the vehicle starts, the image before last power-off is displayed on the transparent panoramic view screen. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to run and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.
- Switching to transparent chassis: tap the icon ①or tap the vehicle body in the left top view image to turn on/off transparent chassis view.
- Radar sensor alarm: tap the icon②to activate/deactivate the radar sensor alarm for parking.




- 3D view: tap the icon ③ to turn on 3D panoramic view, which may be shown in different view angles by either dragging the image or by tapping a specific view icon.
- When the reverse gear is engaged, the system displays the panoramic view. The rear view displayed in the right area contains the vehicle reversing guide line.

**Interface icons:**

| Function | Corres pondin g icons | Operation description | Target state after operation | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Panoramic view camera interface |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the panoramic view interface is entered. | Enter 2D or 3D panoramic view interface | |
| Setting Interface |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the panoramic view setting interface is entered. | Enter the panoramic view setting interface | |
| Panoramic view of non-transparent vehicle |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is not highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the non-transparent panoramic function is activated. | The panoramic view vehicle body is switched from transparent vehicle to actual vehicle. | After switching, the aerial view and 2D view are all actual vehicle. |
| Transparent vehicle panoramic function |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the transparent panoramic function is activated. | The panoramic view vehicle body is switched from actual vehicle to transparent vehicle. | After switching, the aerial view and 2D view are all transparent vehicle. |
| Radar arc segment |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the radar arc segment is activated. | After the radar triggers the alarm, the arc segment and value indicating the radar distance will be displayed around the 2D vehicle body view. | |
| 3D panoramic function |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates that the 3D panoramic function is activated. | The panoramic view vehicle body switches from 2D to 3D. | |
| 2D panoramic function |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, if it is highlighted as shown in the figure, it indicates | The panoramic view vehicle body | |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | that the 2D panoramic function is activated. | switches from 3D to 2D. | |

**2D:**

| Function | Corresponding icons | Operation description | Target state after operation | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2D front view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D front view interface. If it is already the front view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 2D rear view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D rear view interface. If it is already the rear view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 2D left view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D left view interface. If it is already the left view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | the same result. |
| 2D right view |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D right view interface. If it is already the right view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 2D front wide angle |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | Full-screen front wide-angle view. | This view will be also displayed by the double click of front single view. |
| 2D rear wide angle |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | Full-screen rear wide-angle view. | This view will be also displayed by the double click of rear single view. |
| 2D left and right side views |  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 2D interface to 2D left and right side view interface. If it is already the left and right side view interface, there is no change. | |

**3D:**

| Function | Corresponding icons | Operation description | Target state after operation | Remarks |
|---|---|---|---|---|

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 3D front view  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 3D interface to 3D front view interface. If it is already the front view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 3D rear view  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 3D interface to 3D rear view interface. If it is already the rear view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 3D left view  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 3D interface to 3D left view interface. If it is already the left view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |
| 3D right view  | Operate by touch. After a single touch, the icon will be highlighted to activate the front view as shown in the figure. | The panoramic view interface is switched from any other 3D interface to 3D right view interface. If it is already the right view interface, there is no change. | The operations can also be completed through the corresponding upper, lower, left and right areas in the aerial view, which can get the same result. |

**WARNING**

- The panoramic view system provides transparent panoramic view to show the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in observation of area below the vehicle during parking/ driving. Investigation of foreign

**WARNING**

objects below the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in any other manner to ensure the safety of personnel and the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent panoramic view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.
- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The panoramic view system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the panoramic view system; and when the panoramic view system is used for parking/driving, ensure that all the car doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the panoramic view screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front grille, side mirrors, and the rear number plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent affecting camera performance, avoid spraying

**WARNING**

directly on the cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.

- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the panoramic view start button or shift into reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the panoramic view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- After the vehicle starts, the image before last power-off is displayed on the transparent panoramic view screen. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to run and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.
- When any camera is damaged, the corresponding view will be black on the screen.

## Parking Assist System*

- When the vehicle is being parked, PAS uses radar sensors to detect obstacles and sends alarms through loudspeakers to alert the driver about the distance between the vehicle and obstacles.
- The parking assist system helps with reversing. Pay attention to the

environment behind and around the vehicle during reversing.

**WARNING**

- The parking assist system ceases to operate when the vehicle is moving at over 10 km/h (6mph) or the D gear is engaged and kept over 10s.
- Do not place any articles within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

### Parking radar switch

- To activate or deactivate the parking assist system (PAS), go to → ADAS → Parking Assist → Parking Radar from the touchscreen.
- When the ignition is switched on and EPB is released, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.
- When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found surrounding the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

### Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

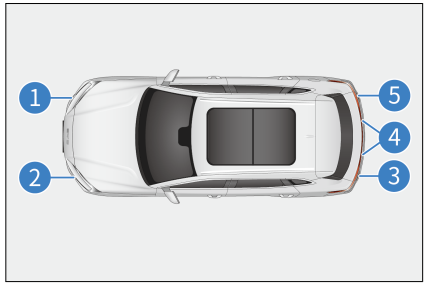
① Front right corner sensor *

② Front left corner sensor *

③ Rear left corner sensor

④ Rear left and right centre sensors

⑤ Rear right corner sensor




### Distance Display Alarm

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

**Working example of centre sensors**

| Approximate Distance | Touchscreen Display Example | Alarm Sound |
|---|---|---|
| about (700-1200mm)<br>About 28-47 in |  | Slow |

| Approximate Distance | Touchscreen Display Example | Alarm Sound |
|---|---|---|
| about (300-700mm)<br>About 12-28 in |  | Fast |
| about (0-300 mm)<br>About 0-12 in |  | Continuous |

**Working example of corner sensors**

| Approximate Distance | Touchscreen Display Example | Alarm Sound |
|---|---|---|
| about (300-600mm)<br>About 12-24 in |  | Fast |
| about (0-300 mm)<br>About 0-12 in |  | Continuous |

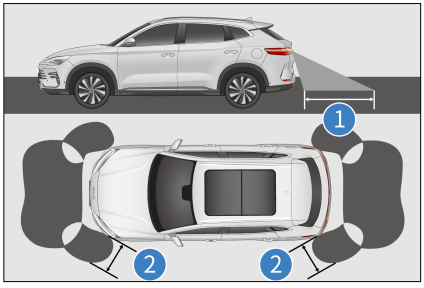
### Working Sensors and Detection Range

All sensors are activated upon reversing.

The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so drivers must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.

① About 1200mm(47in)

① About 600mm(24in)




### Error message

Failure of the reversing radar system is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster and a beep.




**REMINDER**

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgment.

**REMINDER**

Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.

- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.

**Sensor detection information**

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
  - The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag kerb.
  - The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
  - The vehicle is fitted with non-original, lower suspension.
- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners
  - Low obstacles
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle
  - Any object under the bumper
  - Any object close to the vehicle
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.

## Interior Motion Sensor System

- When vehicle is powered off, locked and in anti-theft status, the system will start to detect moving things after 20s. If moving thing is detected, an alarm is given in the form of light flashing and alertor sounding. This system is a part of the anti-theft system, which can prevent illegal intrusion into the vehicle compartment and unauthorized use of the vehicle. To cancel the alarm, unlock any door.

**How to Use**

- Go to touchscreen→ Vehicle → Cabin Perception → Interior Motion Sensor.
- Two options are provided: OFF and ON. By default, the system is switched on each time when the vehicle is powered on. When is swtiched OFF, the alarming function is off during this travel.

**System Response**

- The system starts the alarm (light flashing & honking) after detecting moving things.

**WARNING**

- The system reminds people of intrusion by flashing lights and alertor sounding, but it can not completely avoid intrusion.
- When a reminder is provided, confirm whether there is an intrusion in time to avoid further property losses.

**CAUTION**

- Misidentification or false alarm could happen when:
- Using cleaning tools to wash the vehicle, such as high-pressure water guns, channeled vehicle washing devices.
- Transporting a vehicle on a train, ship or trailer.
- In the double garage.
- There are moving objects in the vehicle, such as pets, moving toys, running fans.
- In the above cases, it is recommended to close the function, and the function is effective during the power-off period.

**Icons and pop-ups**

| Status Light Pop-up window | Meaning |
|---|---|
|  | Interior Motion Sensor Fault |

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring

- The direct tyre pressure monitoring system is an auxiliary system that monitors tyre pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tyre wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tyre pressure.

- The user can access the instrument cluster menu by pressing the button on the steering wheel, navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the ◁ and ▷ buttons, and then select the tyre pressure display interface using the roller on the button.

**System Function**

1. Power-on alarm

The tyre is already in a low pressure state when the vehicle is powered off. When the vehicle is powered on again, a low pressure alarm is given immediately to prompt the user to inflate the tyre before driving.

2. Low tyre pressure alarm

- When the pressure of any one of the four tyres is lower than 85% of the standard tyre pressure and the system is running, the tyre pressure fault indicator lights up and the tyre pressure value turns yellow. It is advisable to stop the vehicle and check the corresponding tyres for slow leaks and to inflate them to a reasonable pressure.
- When the tyre pressure is greater than 90% of the standard value, the low pressure alarm is canceled.

3. Fast air leakage alarm

When one or more tyres leak at a rate above or equal to 30 Pa/min and the system is running, the tyre pressure fault indicator keeps flashing and the tyre pressure value becomes red. If the vehicle has started to give an air leak alarm, please stop the vehicle in time to check the faulty tyres.

4. Fault alarm

If there is a fault when the system is running, the tyre pressure fault indicator flashes and then keeps on, and the instrument cluster displays "Abnormal Signal". Check the tyre pressure monitoring module, and for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby.

5. Real-time tyre pressure display

Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS)can display the information on each tyre pressure in real time when it is running.

**Precautions**

- The running time of the tyre pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tyre pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tyre pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tyre, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If a damaged tyre is accompanied by the monitoring module damage and thus no message can be sent, or if it is suspected that a tyre has been damaged, stop driving immediately, instead of waiting for the display to send an alarm signal.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tyre. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- To change tyre position or replace tyre pressure monitoring module, first rematch the entire tyre monitoring system. It is recommended to have this done by the professional technicians from a BYD authorised dealer or

service provider; otherwise, system failure may occur.

- Since tyre pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tyres according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tyre pressure values.
- TPMS applies wireless transmission, which may lead to poor reception under serious interference.

**CAUTION**

- The system does not stop vehicle travelling in the event of abnormal tyre pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, start the vehicle statically to check whether the tyre pressure meets the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injury can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tyre pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the kerb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tyre pressure can cause permanent damage to tyres and increase the likelihood of tyre scrapping. Serious tyre damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

# Head-up Display (HUD)*

### Head-up Display (HUD)*

HUD shows essential information (such as vehicle speed, speed limit, ACC, lane departure and BSD) that is projected outside the front windscreen and reflected to the driver's field of view. This avoids frequent switching of eye focus and improves driving safety。

### How to Use

To enable or disable HUD, go to infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle Settings**. By factory default, the switch is toggled on and a HUD image is displayed. When the switch is toggled off, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to previous settings when the vehicle starts.

### Set HUD

- Height adjusting: 21 levels of brightness adjustment (-10 to 10) for HUD virtual images (default level: 0).
- Brightness adjusting: 11 levels of height adjustment (1 to 11) for HUD virtual images (default level: 6).
- Whirling Adjusting: adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0°.
- Mode Setting: Used to select "Classic" (default setting) or "Snow" mode according to the service environment of the vehicle.
- Settings optional for display: The Safe driving assist function is activated by default. Tap the icon to deactivate the function.

**CAUTION**

- Do not put articles on the head-up display.
- Wipe the dust on the dust-proof board with soft cotton cloth or paper towel.

**CAUTION**

- No water or other liquid is allowed to flow into the opening of the head-up display.

## Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

**Intelligent Power Braking System**

The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic braking system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, and ABS/ESC functionality. This system, based on the driver's braking demand, provides power assistance for braking when needed. It also features advanced control functions like ABS, electronic brakeforce distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), comfort stop (CST), and comfort regenerative braking system (CRBS) that enhance vehicle stability, comfort, and brake energy recovery efficiency.

**Vehicle Dynamics Control (VDC)**

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

**Traction Control System (TCS)**

TCS prevents drive wheels from slipping during acceleration by reducing the engine power. It also applies braking forces when necessary to prevent drive wheels from idling. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

**WARNING**

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - When the vehicle is running on a wet and slippery road, TCS may be unable to control the direction and meet the power requirements, even if it is functional;
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

**Hill Hold Control (HHC)**

On a slope with a gradient of > 3%, after the brake pedal is released, the HHC can maintain the brake pressure applied by the driver for about 1 s to prevent the vehicle from sliding backward.

**Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)**

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

**Controller Deceleration Parking (CDP)**

When the EPB switch is pulled up, CDP starts to work and the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (the deceleration is 0.4g if only the EPB switch is pulled up and 0.8g if the EPB switch is pulled up and the brake pedal is pressed at the same time) until the vehicle comes to a stop. If the driver releases EPB, CDP stops functioning.

**Hill Descent Control (HDC)***

- Working principle: The hill descent control (HDC), an added feature of the ESC system, is designed to improve vehicle comfort. To activate or deactivate the HDC, go to (infotainment system) → ADAS. the main function of which is to assist in uphill and downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.
- Activate HDC:
  - When the vehicle speed is lower than 38 km/h, activate the HDC and state indicator on the instrument cluster stays on.
- HDC speed control:
  - HDC is functional when the vehicle speed is within 11 km/h - 38 km/h. In this case, press/release the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the speed. The pedal release determines the final speed. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- Deactivate HDC:
  - Deactive the HDC, and the indicator on the instrument cluster goes out immediately.
  - HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special conditions, such as at a long stretches downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily unavailable due to high brake temperature. You need to drive safely at this point. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

ESC operation instructions

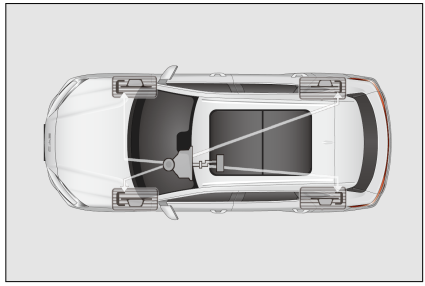
- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce the power output from the motor to wheels. Activate the snow mode to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - Go to infotainment →ADAS to turn off ESC. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC system is working, the system will complete the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
- After ESC is turned off, some of its deactivated functions will be enabled if either the ESC OFF button is pressed again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h. In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting ESC after the vehicle is powered off

- When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the vehicle will automatically restart ESC system.
- The start of ESC is linked with the vehicle speed.
- With ESC turned off, the vehicle can become highly unstable at a speed beyond 80 km/h, so ESC starts automatically in this case.

- When ESC system is activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, be sure to drive carefully, because careless driving may cause an accident. Exercise additional caution when the indicator is flashing.
- When ESC system is disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing Tyres
  - Make sure all tyres are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tyres to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tyres.
  - For details on tyre or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Tyre and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tyre or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**

- The hydraulic system ofAntilock Braking System (ABS)to drive the brake has two independent circuits. Each circuit passes through the vehicle diagonally (the front left wheel brake is connected with the rear right wheel brake, etc.) and acts. If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked. If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.



- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking or skidding when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.
- When the front tyres skid, there is no steering control, which means that the vehicle still moves forward even though the steering wheel is turned. ABS helps prevent locking and maintain steering control since pulsating prompt brake is much faster than human reaction.
- Never pulsate the brake pedal; otherwise, ABS may malfunction. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work.
- When ABS is activated, noise may be heard. This is normal because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly.

**CAUTION**

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS cannot reduce the time and distance required to brake the vehicle. This device only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- When running on soft or uneven surfaces (such as gravel or snow), a vehicle with ABS may require a longer braking distance than a vehicle without ABS. In such cases, slow down and keep a long distance from other vehicles.

**WARNING**

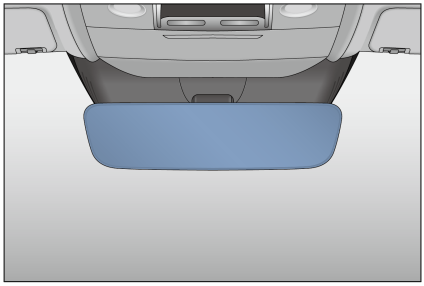
- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tyres used do not have a sufficient grip level (e.g., excessively worn tyres are used on snow-covered roads);
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on muddy, sandy or snowy roads;
  - Driving on uneven roads or with multiple potholes;
  - Bumpy roads.

# Other Main Functions

## Interior Rearview Mirror

**Automatic Anti-Glare***

The automatic anti-glare interior rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically adjusts the lens colour of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.



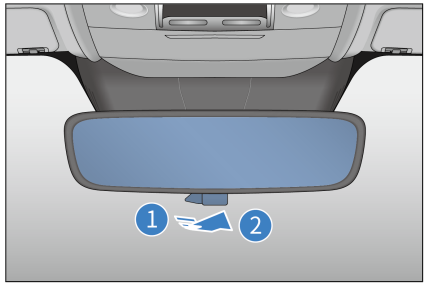
**WARNING**

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror to avoid the mirror falling off.
- Do not adjust the interior rearview mirror while driving, as this may obstruct the control of the vehicle, resulting in personal injury or death from accidents.

**Manual Anti-Glare***

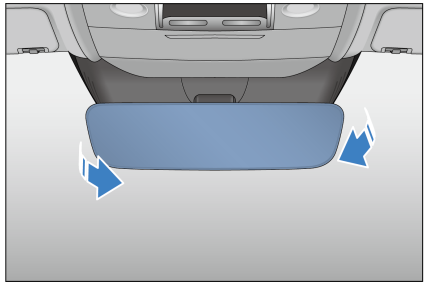
The rearview mirror can be adjusted to two positions suitable for driving in the daytime and at night. The nighttime position reduces glare from vehicles to the rear.

- For daytime driving - adjust the control lever to position ①, where the image on the rearview mirror is the clearest.
- For nighttime driving - adjust the control lever to position ②. Remember that rear view image clarity decreases when glare is reduced.




**Adjusting the Rearview Mirror Manually**

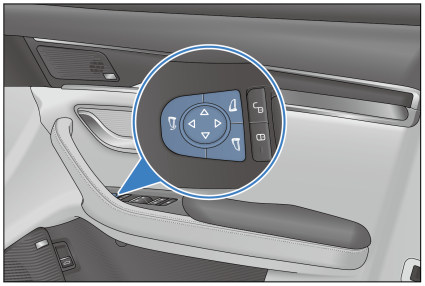
Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



## Power Side Mirrors

Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle using.

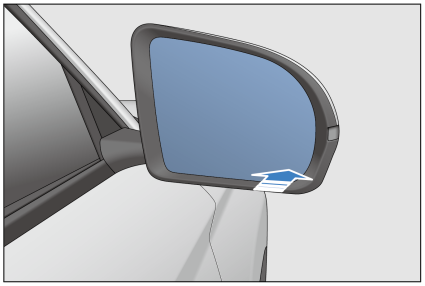
- Selection switches - used to select the external rearview mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Left external rearview mirror button
  - : Right external rearview mirror button



- Adjustment switch - used to adjust the external rearview mirror lens. Press the switch indicating the desired direction.

**Manual Adjustment**

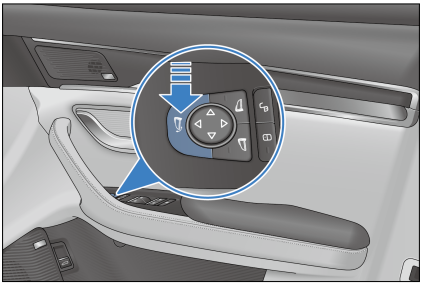
Press the edge of the mirror by hand to rotate the mirror around the centre and adjust it to a proper position.



**Folding Side Mirrors**

**Folding side mirrors with power**

- Press the button to fold the external rearview mirror electrically and press it again to unfold it.
- Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when the system is disarmed.



**REMINDER**

- Do not adjust the side mirrors while the vehicle is in motion. This may obstruct the control of the vehicle, resulting in accidents.
- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

## Wipers

Check the condition of the front and rear wiper blades at least once every six months for cracks or local hardening of the rubber. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windscreen will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.

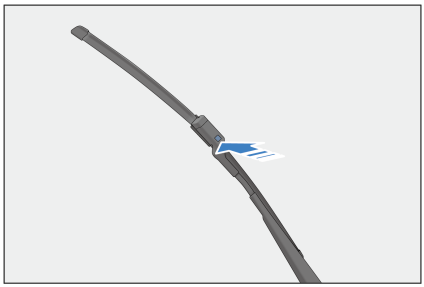
**Replacing Wiper Blades**

**Replacing Front Wiper Blade**

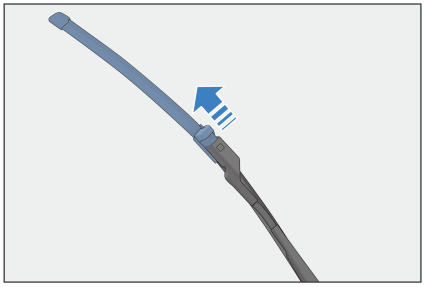
The user can go to infotainment system → Vehicle Health →Overhaul to activate the wiper maintenance function. After the function is activated, the wiper runs to a high position and then stop, so as to facilitate maintenance and replacement of the wiper. After maintenance, the wiper returns to

the reset position after the wiper maintenance function is deactivated.

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button.

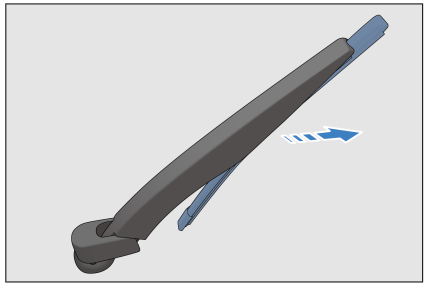


3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction.
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



**Replacing Rear Wiper Blade**

1. Lift the rear wiper arm from the rear windscreen.
2. Hold the wiper arm by hand and pull out the blade vertically, as shown in the figure.
3. When assembling a new wiper blade, operate in the reverse order of removal.



**CAUTION**

- Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the bonnet and wiper arms.
- Lower the wipers slowly and avoid direct impact onto the windscreen.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.

## Snow Chains

**Snow Chain Instructions**

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains are to be fitted to the front wheels(2WD) or four wheels(4WD) and extra care is required for driving a vehicle fitted with snow chains on icy roads. Some snow chains may damage the tyres, wheels, suspension, and vehicle body. Therefore, use thin snow chains so as to provide enough free space between tyres and other parts in the hubcap.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.

- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- After the snow chains are installed, driving speed should be less than 30km/h (19mph) on icy and snowy roads.
- In order to minimise wear of tyres and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

**REMINDER**

- Do not drive above 30 km/h (19mph) or the limit speed specified by the snow chain manufacturer, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.
- Tyres snow chains should be used symmetrically and remove immediately when not in use.

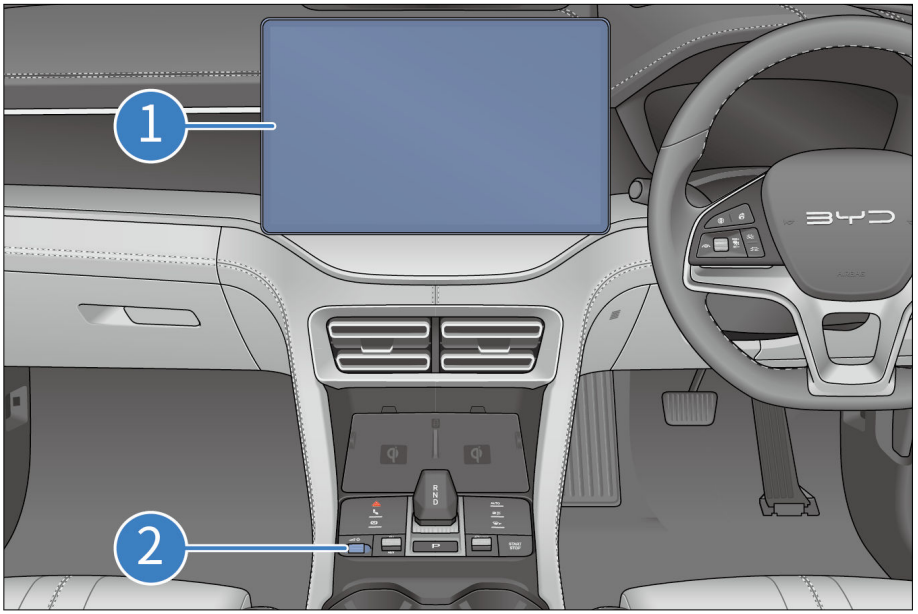
# 05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System..... 182
BYD App..... 184
A/C System..... 186
Storage Device..... 193
Other Devices..... 195

# Infotainment System

## Infotainment Button

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work.




1 Multimedia Touchscreen

2 Infotainment switch/Scroll button

**WARNING**

- To avoid faults in the infotainment system, do not use a high-power inverter on the vehicle.
- Do not format or root the device without authorisation, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

**CAUTION**

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove finger from the screen, then touch it again.

**CAUTION**

- Clean the screen with a soft damp cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - Touchscreen buttons that are greyed out cannot be operated.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.
- In driving, please use the infotainment system in landscape mode wherever possible for your safety.

**REMINDER**

- To better experience infotainment functions, such as voice control and apps, the system must be used after network connection.

**widget**

When the multimedia system is started, the widget screen is automatically displayed. The desktop displays customized components from the factory, and users can also edit them according to their own preferences:

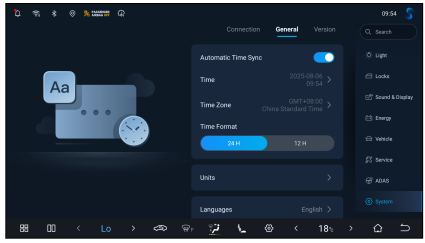
1. To add a widget: Slide the desktop component, and the right side of the widget area provides an entry for adding widgets. User can click the entry to add widgets by themselves.
2. To delete a widget: Hold the icon of the widget to be deleted, and the widget will display the deletable mark. Click the delete mark for operation.
3. Changing widget position: Press and hold one of the widget icons, drag it to the other widget position, and let go to change the current position.

**CAUTION**

- The contents of desktop components on your actual vehicle may differ.

**Language Setting**

- After the vehicle is started, click → **System** → **General** → **Language** on the touch screen of the center console to set the language to "Simplified Chinese" or "English".




**BYD Assistant**

BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio/DAB, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.

- Waking up BYD Assistant:
  - On the steering wheel, press the button.

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap  .
- Say the wake-up word: "Hi, BYD."

- Your voice commands can be recognised after system wake-up.
- Give any instructions.
  - This may be "Go home" (shortcut locations set), "Play music", "Make a call" (contacts data and Bluetooth connection required), "Set the temperature to 23°C", or "Turn on the seat ventilation for the driver". BYD Assistant then performs the recognised instruction.

**OTA Upgrade**

- The vehicle has the function of software upgrade. Upgrade the vehicle system by tapping Infotainment System → DiLink → Version Management → Vehicle Version → Upgrade, so that your vehicle functions are in the latest state.
- Prompt information will be sent when the vehicle needs software update to remind you to upgrade the software. Choose to upgrade immediately, make an appointment to upgrade or upgrade by the mobile phone to start the system software upgrade according to the situation.

**CAUTION**

- Do not move the vehicle during the OTA upgrade.
- Ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe area, the gear is in "P" gear, and the mobile communication network is connected to the normal state before the OTA Upgrade starts.
- Ensure that the vehicle has sufficient power.

**CAUTION**

- Before or during the OTA upgrade, do not install any third-party equipment at the OBD port of the vehicle.
- The vehicle cannot be charged or discharged during the upgrade. Please ensure that the vehicle has sufficient power before upgrading.
- During OTA upgrade, all functions are inoperable except smart key locking/unlocking, microswitch locking/unlocking, interior light switch/emergency warning light/ window switch.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, please retry it. If it fails again, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.

# BYD App

## BYD APP

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) developed by BYD independently. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- Search for "BYD" in Google Play or App Store to download and install BYD App.




## Account Registration

App guidance and the following steps give instructions on signing up and logging in after BYD app installation.

1. Open the app, then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorised dealer, tap **Send email** to receive verification code, and then enter the code in app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

**CAUTION**

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorised dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

## Vehicle Condition and Control

### Vehicle Condition and Control

The BYD app homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, and tyre pressure.
2. Tap lock, unlock, light flashing & honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation, see A/C Operation Interface for details.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tyres to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

**CAUTION**

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

## Individual Centre and Vehicle Management

**Individual Centre and Vehicle Management**

Tap the icon on the upper right corner to go to the individual centre.

- Vehicle management: changes vehicle name and number plate.
- Account and security: recovers or changes your password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- About: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

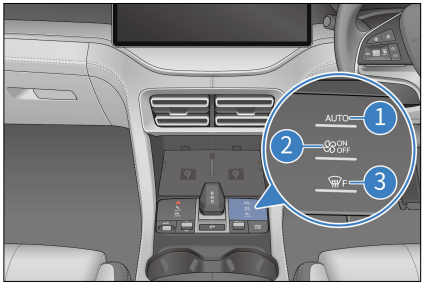
# A/C System

## A/C ON/OFF

① AUTO

② A/C button

③ Front windscreen defroster



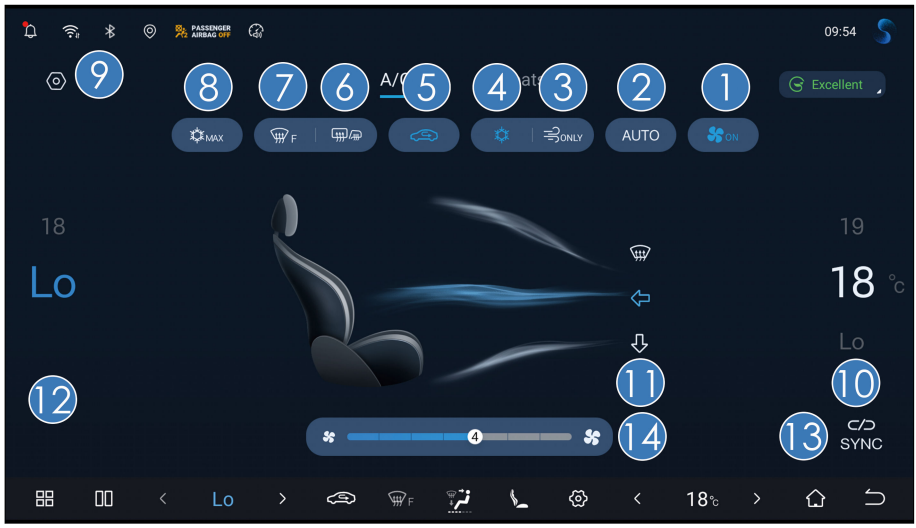

**REMINDER**

- Remote A/C activation:

**REMINDER**

- The user can turn on the A/C through the remote control key or BYD APP to gain a comfortable interior environment in advance.

# A/C Operation Interface




1 A/C ON/OFF

2 Automatic A/C button

3 Ventilation Button

4 Cooling Button

5 Circulation mode

6 Rear defroster

7 Front windscreen defroster

8 Max cooling

9 Independent control

10 Driver climate control

11 Blowing Mode

12 Front passenger's temperature control button

13 Independent control

14 Fan speed adjustment

**REMINDER**

- A/C odours:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the motorcar A/C, A/C condensation often remain in the evaporator, and the wet evaporator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle. Condensation not blown dry makes the dark and damp evaporator surface prone to mold, which is very likely to produce odours by long-term fermentation.

**REMINDER**

- How to prevent A/C odours:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the filter regularly.
  - Try to keep the vehicle clean and fresh.
- If the odour persists after the prevention measures are used, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.
- In order to keep the internal working environment of A/C system dry, the A/C blower may automatically start for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. It dries the condensed water generated on the evaporator surface when the A/C is turned on, so as to prevent mold breeding on the evaporator surface. It is normal for the A/C blower to start running automatically when you lock the vehicle. No need to worry about it.

## Function Definition

**Auto mode**

- Tap this button, and then the button lights up (the automatic A/C button indicator on the gearshift lever panel lights up), and the compressor state, blower speed, and vent mode are automatically adjusted.
- Features remain in the automatic mode until other operation is performed. If the blower speed, vent mode or compressor state is manually set, the full-automatic control is disabled.

**A/C ON/OFF**

- When the A/C is on, press this button to turn the A/C off.
- When the A/C is off, press this button to turn the A/C on.

**Seat vent/heating**

- Tap this button to enable the seat ventilation and heating function. See the ***P*** seats* in 3 - Operation of Controller for specific operation methods.

**Fan speed control**

- Tap this icon to set the blower speed to the desired level. The higher the level, the greater the blower speed.

**Front windscreen defroster**

- Tap this button to enter the front windscreen defrost mode, distributing air to the front windscreen and side windows. Tap this button again to exit this mode.
- Tap this button to turn on the defroster, defogger, and A/C. That is, the A/C is turned on regardless of whether the compressor control button is operated.

**Temperature controls**

- Driver's temperature control
  - Individual Mode: Temperature regulation on the driver side.
  - Relative Mode: Temperature regulation on the driver and front passenger side.
  - To increase/decrease the temperature, tap the upper/lower arrow on the screen, or touch the temperature display area and then swipe downwards/upwards.

- When it is adjusted to the coldest position, "LO" is displayed. highest value.

- Front passenger's temperature control button
  - Individual Mode: Temperature regulation on the front passenger side.
  - Relative Mode: This mode is for setting temperature for the front passenger space, and then quitting the linkage mode and entering the independent mode.
  - To increase/decrease the temperature, tap the upper/lower arrow on the screen, or touch the temperature display area and then swipe downwards/upwards.
  - When it is adjusted to the coldest position, "LO" is displayed. highest value.

**Independent control button**

- Tap this button to switch from independent mode to associated mode.
  - Individual Mode: The temperature of the driver's side and front passenger's side can be set seperately. When the individual mode is selected, the button icon lights up.
  - Relative Mode: Adjust the driver side and front passenger side set temperature at the same time by the driver side temperature control. In the relative mode, the press icon is grey.
- When the front passenger's temperature control is operated in relative mode, the A/C system will automatically switch to individual mode.

**Max cooling**

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The compressor is turned on, the temperature is adjusted to LO, the blower speed is adjusted to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air blows in face level mode.
- Tap this button again to exit.

**Cooling**

Tap this button to turn on the A/C. At this time, the icon lights up and the compressor starts to work. Tap this button again to turn off the A/C, the icon goes out and the compressor stops working.

**Circulation mode**

- Tap this button to switch the air inlet mode to recirculation, and the icon  is displayed. Tap this button again to switch the air inlet mode to fresh air, and the icon  is displayed.
- When the "automatic recirculation when parking" function is enabled, to ensure air quality in the vehicle and prevent the vehicle exhaust from entering the vehicle, the recirculation mode is switched on automatically after you shift into "P".

**Rear defroster**

- Tap this button to heat up and defrost the rear windscreen and side mirrors. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button. Tap this button a second time to disable the function.
- This function is not for drying raindrops or melting snow.

**WARNING**

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.

**CAUTION**

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windscreen, take care not to scratch or damage heating wires or connectors.

**Ventilator**

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air.
- Tap this button again to deactivate A/C ventilation control and enter AUTO mode.

**Air distribution**

Tap an icon on the infotainment touchscreen to select the corresponding air distribution mode. Blowing modes can be freely selected on the infotainment system screen, and up to three blowing modes can be activated at the same time as required.

: Air flows to the face level.

: Air flows to the foot level.

: Air flows to the front windscreen and side windows.



**Precautions for Operation**

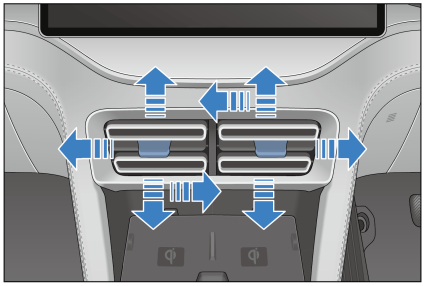
- To quickly cool down the vehicle parked under the burning sun, open the window and drive for several minutes. to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To cool down quickly, adjust the temperature to "LO" and keep the setting in recirculation mode for several minutes.
- Make sure that the air inlet grille in front of the front windscreen is not blocked (by such things as leaves or snow).
- In wet weather, do not let cold air blow onto the windscreen. The temperature difference between the inside and outside of the windscreen causes fogging windscreen.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, the fan speed is recommended to be set to a high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake channel, so as to reduce fogging of the window.
- In cold weather, enable recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating. and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.

- Close all windows when following other vehicles on a dusty road or driving in windy and dusty conditions. switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button (turning on the compressor), which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

## Vents

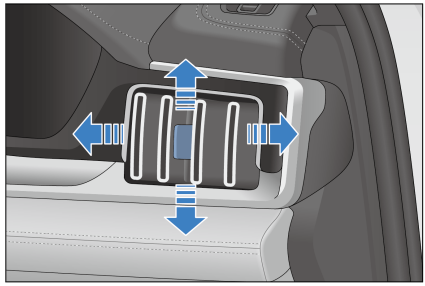
**Front Centre Vent**

The venting angle or blower speed can be adjusted by toggling adjusting sheets in the centre of vents, and vents can be closed by toggling adjusting sheets left and right to the limit.



**Front Side Vents**

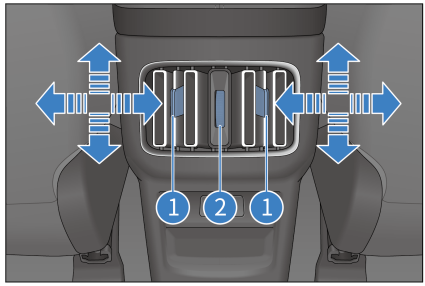
The venting angle or blower speed can be adjusted by toggling adjusting sheets in the left/right vent, and vents can be closed by toggling adjusting sheets up and down to the limit.



**Rear vent**

① The venting angle can be adjusted by toggling adjusting sheets in the vents.

② The vents can be adjusted or turned on/off by toggling the roller.



# Air Purification System*

The air purification system purifies airborne PM2.5 particles. When A/C is turned on, the system thoroughly removes PM2.5 particles from the air blown into the cabin.

**Air purification operation interface**

Tap "Air purification" on the touchscreen.




① Air purification interface

② PM2.5 Detection Button

③ Quick Purification Button

④ Outside PM2.5 Value Display

⑤ In-Vehicle PM2.5 Value Display

**PM2.5 detection**

- Tap this button to detect interior and exterior air quality. The detection values and levels are displayed on the PAD in real time.
- Tap this button again to turn off the air quality detection function.

**Quick purification**

- Activates or
- Tap it a second time to end fast purification.

**In-Vehicle PM2.5 Value Display**

- Tap this icon to display the interior air PM2.5 value and level.

**REMINDER**

- The PM2.5 value detected by the on-board air purification (PM2.5) detector is the PM2.5 value in the air near the vehicle carrying the device in a short time, which should be different from the daily or real-time PM2.5 value declared by national and relevant government authorities.

**REMINDER**

- Reduce the frequency of PM2.5 detection in the following environments:
  - Sandstorms and other such extremely harsh environments.
  - Cold regions (ambient temperature <-20°C)
  - High humidity environments (relative humidity >90%);
  - Environments with a change in temperature (prone to condensation), such as driving in from a cold environment to a high-temperature indoor environment or car park.
- Running maximum air flow speed in internal circulation mode can quickly reduce the concentration of fine particles in the air inside the vehicle.

**Outside PM2.5 Value Display**

- Tap this icon to display the exterior air PM2.5 value and level.

## A/C Settings

- Press this button to display A/C Settings screen.
- Tap it again to exit A/C Settings screen.

**Fan Speed Reduction during Calls**

Tap this button to enable this setting.

**Auto Air Recirculation when Parking**

Tap this icon to enable the Auto air recirculation when parking.

Tap this button a second time to disable it.

**Remotely controlled air conditioner running time**

Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.

**Auto A/C Mode**

Two options are available: Economical and Comfort.

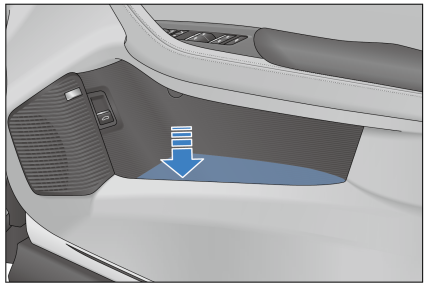
**Automatic purification***

- Tap this button to enable auto purification function.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

# Storage Device

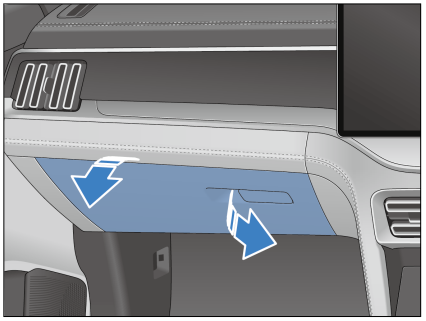
## Door Bins

Each door is equipped with a door bin to store beverage bottles or small items.



## Glove Box

- Pull the handle to open the glovebox. The light in the glovebox goes on when it is opened.
- Push the glovebox up to close. The light in the glovebox goes off when it is closed.

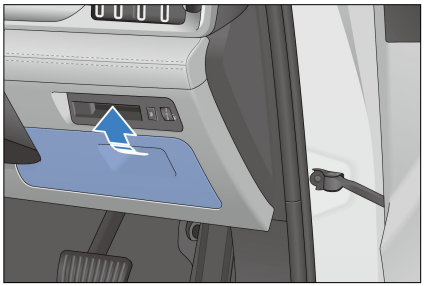


**CAUTION**

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the centre console cubby closed while driving.

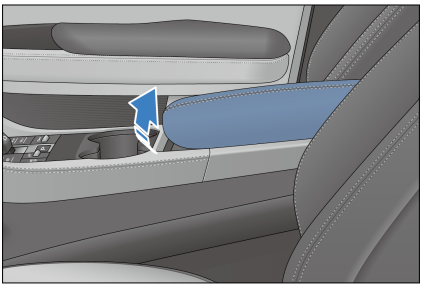
## Bill Box

- Pull the handle on the driver's side glovebox to open it.
- Invoices, business cards, or similar items can be put in the driver's side glovebox. Do not put in large or heavy objects, so as not to close the driver's side glovebox. Please keep the driver's side glovebox closed during driving.



## Centre Console Cubby

- Pull up the centre console cubby cover as the figure shows.
- Press the centre console cubby cover downward to close it.



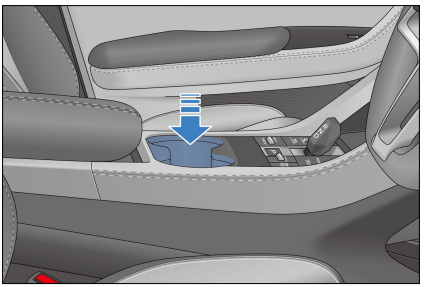
**REMINDER**

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the centre console cubby closed while driving.

## Cup Holder

**Front seat cup holder**

The front seat cup holder is located in the centre console.



**CAUTION**

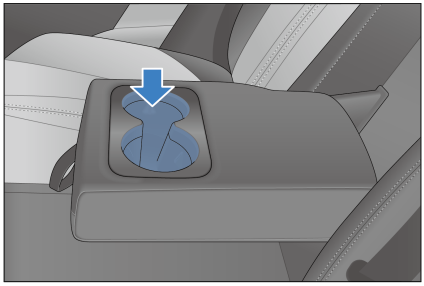
Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage when you are opening and closing the doors and driving.

**CAUTION**

- Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage when you are opening and closing the doors and driving.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

**Rear Seat Cup Holder**

Pull down the rear armrest to use the rear seat cup holder located on it.



**CAUTION**

- When using the cup holder, do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly to prevent liquid spillage and burn you or other passengers.
- Do not place an open cup or untightened beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

## Seatback Pockets

- There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



## Glasses Case

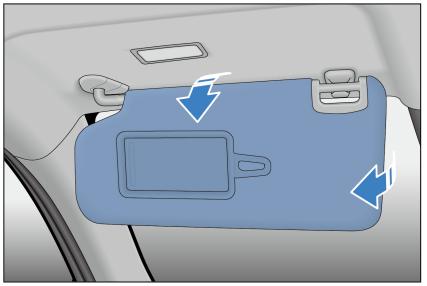
- Press the glasses case cover to open it.



# Other Devices

## Sun Visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.

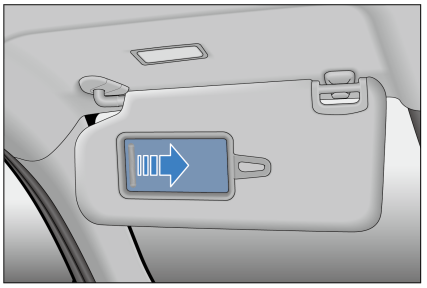


**REMINDER**

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

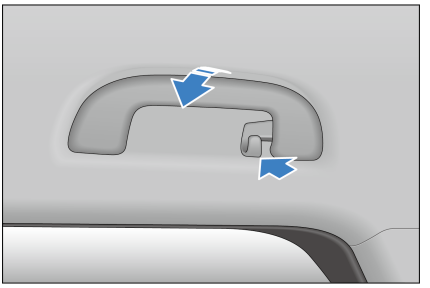
## Vanity Mirror*

- Vanity mirrors are installed on the driver's and front passenger's sun visors.
- To access the vanity mirror, pull the sun visor down and flip open the mirror cover. The vanity mirror indicator lights up. The indicator goes out when you close the mirror cover or fold up the sun visor.



## Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.
- Beside the safety handle is the clothes hook to hang clothes and hats.

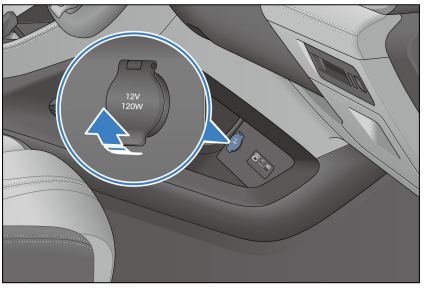


**CAUTION**

- Do not hang heavy objects on safety handles to avoid personal injury or damage to the safety handles.

## 12V Auxiliary Power

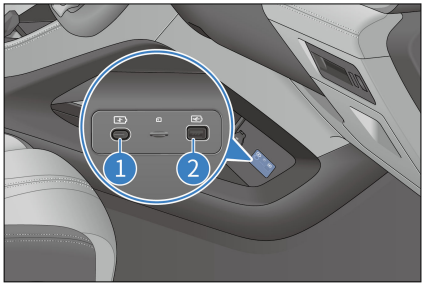
- It is used for accessories with 12V DC working voltage and no more than 10A working current.
- Open the cover of the 12 V backup power to use it when the vehicle is powered on.




## Front-Row USB Ports

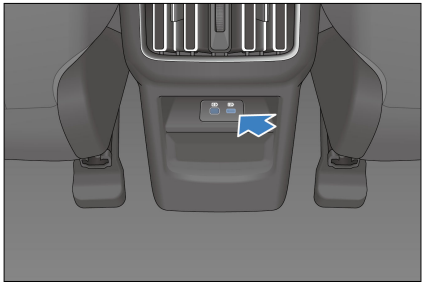
① USB charging port

② USB data transmission port



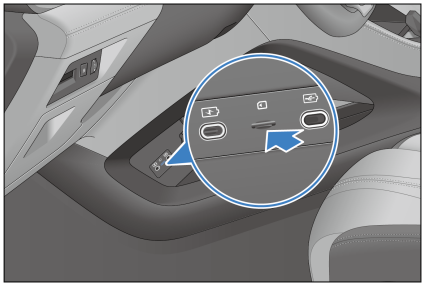

## Rear ports

Rear charging ports can only be used for charging and cannot be connected to the infotainment system.



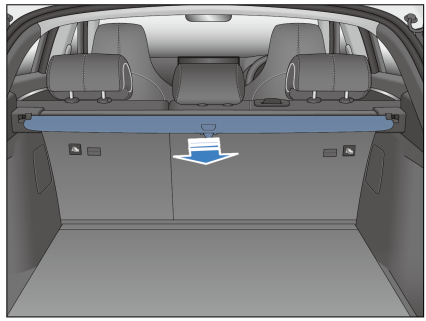
## SD Card Slot*

An SD card slot is provided at the hollow part close to the driver's side under the auxiliary dashboard.



## Cargo Cover

- The cargo cover is used for privacy and direct sunlight protection.
- Lay down the seat, place one side of the cargo cover into the groove of the C-pillar lower shield, then press it to the bottom, and insert it into the groove of the C-pillar lower shield on the other side from above the seat lock ring. Pull out the curtain and hang it in the grooves on both sides in the rear.



- Do the reverse to remove the cover.

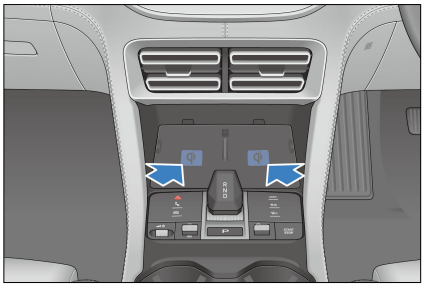
**WARNING**

- When installing the cargo cover, make sure that it is installed securely.
- Do not place any objects on the cargo cover.
- Never allow a child to climb onto the cargo cover, otherwise, damage to the cargo cover, or even injury/death to the child, can happen.

## Smartphone Wireless Charging Position*

- The smartphone wireless charging area is located in the centre console. The user can slide down

the status bar on the top of the infotainment touchscreen to open the Quick interface and turn on or off the smartphone wireless charging function. The system is turned on by default. After the vehicle is started, place the smartphone on the anti-skid rubber pad in the wireless charging area, with the smartphone screen facing upwards, and the smartphone is automatically switched to the wireless charging mode. The charging icon is displayed on the infotainment UI interface.



-  The green icon in the cellphone flashes dynamically during charging.
-  Charging fault: The icon flashes.

**REMINDER**

- The smartphone wireless charging setting icon can be added or deleted in the edit bar on the Quick interface of the Infotainment System.
- The wireless phone charger function is not compatible with all smartphones, and only applies to QI-certified phones.
- Do not place any foreign objects in the charging area during program upgrading.

**REMINDER**

- Two phones can be charged at the same time.
- Thick phone shells may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charging may intermittently stop and then resume.
- If the smartphone deviates from the wireless charging area and stops charging, move the smartphone back to the wireless charging area.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- Ensure your smart key is more than 10 in (25 cm) away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- Do not place heavy objects on the charging area to avoid any damage.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to

**CAUTION**

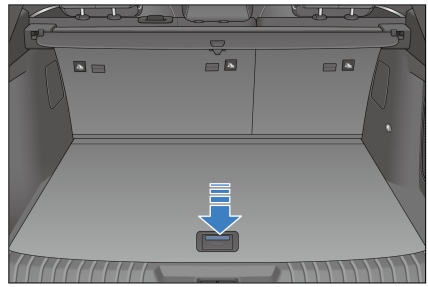
contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger rubber pad during charging, do not remove the metal item with bare hands to prevent burning.
- For better charging, place the smartphone in the centre (where the "Charging Area" is shown).
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area. The wireless charger will malfunction if water enters the wireless charger via the gap around the rubber mat.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.

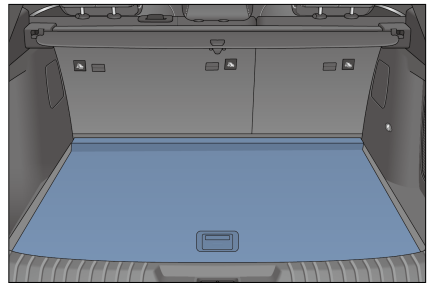
## Boot Cover Board

The boot cover board can be installed at two different heights. Press the handle on the cover board to remove it and adjust height.

1. When installed at the upper height position, the boot cover board is flush with the top surface of the support plate. When the rear seats are laid down, the boot cover board is flatly fitted with the back of the seats.



2. When installed at the lower height position, the boot cover board is stuck on the lower step surface of the support plate, and the storage space can be enlarged.



## Safety Hammer

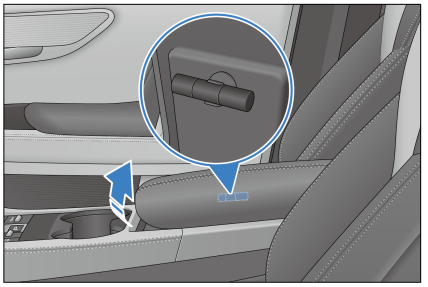
The safety hammer is located in the centre stowage compartment.

The tool is to be used on side door glass only.

It is to be only used in case of emergency exit from the vehicle.

**How to Use**

1. Open the centre stowage compartment to reveal the safety hammer fixed to the right wall of thecentre stowage compartment.
2. Remove the hammer from the stowage compartment.
3. Remove any cover of the hammer end.



4. Hold the handle firmly, hold the hammer end against the glass, push against the glass to activate the spring release.

**WARNING**

- If the side door glass is laminated, it may not shatter and may remain in position.
- Once the glass is fractured and weakened, use appropriate method to push the fractured glass out of the door aperture.
- Take all necessary precautions to not be injured by any broken glass.

# 06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Information..... 202
Regular Maintenance.....205
Self-Maintenance.....210

# Maintenance Information

## Maintenance Cycle and Items

**Maintenance Plan**

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- For the planned maintenance interval, refer to the maintenance timetable depending on the reading of the milometer or the time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- Rubber hoses (for cooling and heating systems, braking systems, etc.) should be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance timetable.
- These are particularly important maintenance items whose maintenance intervals are recorded in the maintenance timetable. Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately.
- The maintenance timetable lists all the maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times.

**Maintenance Timetable Requirements**

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance timetable.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, certain maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads
  - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack
  - The vehicle is driven within 8km (5miles) repeatedly and driven in an environment with temperature below zero.
  - The vehicle is driven in long-term idling or low-speed long-distance driving conditions. The examples include police cars, taxis, or vehicles carrying goods.

**Maintenance Timetable**

**Regular Maintenance**

Regular maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, other project maintenance and engine project maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance: The following maintenance time and maintenance mileage (total mileage) shall be carried out, whichever comes first.

| Items | Time and mileage interval for maintenance |
|---|---|
| Check whether the cooling water pipe is intact and tightly locked at the connecting parts | Every 12 months or 15,000 km (10,000 miles) |

| Items | Time and mileage interval for maintenance |
|---|---|
| Check brake pads and discs | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check brake system pipeline and hoses | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check steering wheel and lever | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check drive shaft dust cover | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check ball pin and dust cover | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check front and rear suspension | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check the tire wear (if the tire eccentric wear is greater than 2mm, check the front and rear wheel alignment) | Check during maintenance, and carry out tire transposition if necessary; In bad working conditions, increase the frequency of inspection, and carry out tire transposition if necessary |
| Inspect EPS appearance corrosion and foreign matters and ablation of connectors (including wiring harness grounding) | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check the coolant level in the expansion tank | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check brake fluid | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check the power battery tray, anti-collision bar, guard plate, battery heat shield * and explosion-proof valve * for collision and deformation, and check the power assembly for leakage | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check the A/C strainer and filter | Every 24 months or 30000 kilometers (20,000 miles), in case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, it is recommended to check in time and replace the air conditioning filter screen if necessary |
| Check exhaust pipe joint for air leakage | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Check fuel filler cap, fuel pipe and connector | Every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Replacing A/C coolant* | Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every 6 years or 90,000 km (60,000 miles) |
| Replace high-voltage battery coolant* | Replace the low conductivity coolant (violet color) for the first 2 years or 30,000 km (20,000 |

| Items | Time and mileage interval for maintenance |
|---|---|
| | miles) and every 4 years or 60,000 km (40,000 miles) thereafter. |
| Replace engine coolant and drive motor coolant | Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every 6 years or 90,000 km (60,000 miles) |
| Replace brake fluid | Check during maintenance and replace every 2 years or 30000 miles (20000) |
| Change steering fluid * | Replace every 6 years or 90,000 km (60,000 miles) |
| Replace EHS special gear oil* | Check the EHS gear oil quantity during maintenance, and replace the oil and filter element assembly every 4 years or 60,000 km(40,000miles). |
| Replace the gear oil in the transmission, front-drive reducer oil and rear-drive transmission oil* | Replace oil every 4 years or 60,000 km (40,000 miles) |
| Replace the transmission filter element* | Replace the filter(press filter) element every 4 years or 60,000 km (40,000 miles) |
| Replace engine oil and oil filter | Replace every 12 months or 15,000 km (10,000 miles) |
| Spark plug | Replace every 45,000 km (30,000 miles) |
| Fuel filter | Replace every 24 months or 30,000 km (20,000 miles) |
| Replace air filter element | Replace it every 12 months or 15000 kilometers (10,000 miles); conduct additional inspection under severe service conditions, and replace it if necessary |
| Replace charcoal canister dust filter* | Every 2 years or 30,000 km (20,000 miles), or upon frequent automatic fuel gun stopping during refueling. |

**REMINDER**

- In order to keep the power battery in the best condition, the vehicle shall be fully charged and discharged regularly (at least every 6 months or 72000 km (45000miles)), so as to achieve the purpose of battery self-calibration. You can also contact the authorized service shop of BYD for capacity test and calibration.

**REMINDER**

**REMINDER**

- In following bad working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the recommended maintenance intervals according to the actual situation to protect the vehicle. Drive the vehicle in low-temperature environment (ambient temperature <5°C) for a long time, and the continuous driving time in HEV mode is short (<15min) every time, or it is frequently driven in a slow crawling condition (vehicle speed <10 km/h (6mph)) for a long time.
- For accidents vehicles or vehicles with abnormal suspension, it is necessary to check whether the battery pack high-voltage wiring harness connector is loose, and the after-sales department sends a technical notice to the BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**Remarks:**

- The maintenance period in the table is calculated from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, please operate the vehicle correctly according to the following instructions.
  - Before the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 50% during running-in in ECO mode.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling the petrol engine.

# Regular Maintenance

## Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance timetable to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the milometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- The maintenance shall be carried out by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the corresponding standards and specifications.
- The maintenance timetable lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

**CAUTION**

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

## Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

**The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:**

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

**The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:**

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If you drive on a saline-alkali road in winter or live in a coastal area, clean the chassis and wheel guard with a high-pressure water gun or steam at least once a month to reduce corrosion. After winter, wash the chassis thoroughly
- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check interior vehicle.
  - Moisture and dust accumulated under the carpet cause corrosion, so the underneath of the carpet should be regularly checked and kept dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilisers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fender liners.
  - Fender liners protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender liner, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

## Paintwork Maintenance

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there are no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or colour incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- Wax the vehicle top coat for protection once a month or when the body surface cannot resist water well, and go to a professional auto detailing shop for maintenance regularly (quarterly) to restore the brightness and luster of the body top coat in time.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If the body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

**CAUTION**

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

## Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

**Washing Vehicle Manually**

Before washing the vehicle, park it in the shade, and wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently.

1. Hose off loose dirt, including all muds or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
2. Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
3. Rinse thoroughly. Otherwise, the washing agent results in stripes after air drying. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
4. Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

**REMINDER**

- Do not use strongly alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents, or organic matters (petrol, kerosene, volatile oil, or strong solvent) to clean the vehicle.
- When cleaning the combination lights, do not wipe their surface with chemical solvents such as petrol, alcohol, lacquer thinner, thinner and carbon tetrachloride. Doing so will cause the combination light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles travelling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or petrol to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Please replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in time. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.

**REMINDER**

- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.

**Automatic Vehicle Washing**

Some types of brushes, unfiltered water, or machine-defined rinse procedures in automatic car wash stations may scratch or damage the paint surface. that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colours. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the staff of the vehicle wash station for the safest wash procedure for the paint surface is a better choice.

## Interior Cleaning

**REMINDER**

- When cleaning the interior or exterior of the vehicle, do not allow water to flow onto the floor and dashboard, as water entering nearby electrical components may cause malfunction.

**Carpet**

- Clean carpets with a good foam detergent.
- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove as much dust as possible. Several types of foam detergents can be used. Some are in spray cans, and the others are powders or liquids, which produce foam when mixed with water. Clean the carpets with foam soaked sponge or a brush, scrubbing in a circular motion.
- Do not use plain water, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

**Seat Belts**

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tears or cut marks.

**CAUTION**

- Do not clean the seat belt with colourant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt’ s strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

**Doors and Windows**

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Gently wipe the inner side of the rear windscreen along the left and right directions. Excessive force or wiping up and down may damage the heating wires of the rear defroster and aerial conductor.
- Check the door brake regularly. If obvious dust accumulation is found on the brake rod, wipe it with a wet soft cloth to remove dust on the surface, and then apply 0.3~0.8 g grease between the bracket and the rod riveted shaft, and between the rod and the sliding block.

**CAUTION**

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to

**CAUTION**

scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

**A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches**

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

**CAUTION**

- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, petrol) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discolouration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.

**Leather**

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth soaked with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean wet cloth to wipe off the residual detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**CAUTION**

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, petrol, acid or alkali, as these will cause discolouration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discolouration or spots.

# Self-Maintenance

## Self-Maintenance

**Self-Maintenance Precautions**

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the good use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

**CAUTION**

- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed; otherwise, the engine is excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the bonnet, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.

**REMINDER**

- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. If you still feel uncomfortable with your hands or eyes, seek medical attention immediately.

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: The radiator and expansion tank should be checked at each charge.
- Windscreen washer fluid - check the amount of washer fluid in the fluid reservoir once a month. If the washer fluid is frequently used due to bad weather, increase the frequency of checking.
- Windscreen wiper - Check wiper conditions monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.
- Brake fluid level - check the fluid level at least once a month.
- Brake pedal - Check whether the brake pedal is operating properly.
- EPB switch - Check whether the switch is functional.
- 12V battery - check the battery condition and terminal corrosion once a month.

- A/C system - Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tyres - Check tyre pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windscreen defrosters - Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights - check the lighting system once a month to confirm the state of working.
- Doors - check whether the boot lid and doors can be opened and closed normally and locked firmly.
- Horn - Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

**CAUTION**

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

### Lights

#### Headlight alignment

Headlights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, headlights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the headlights aligned by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

#### Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

**CAUTION**

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signals on side mirrors, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

## Sunroof Maintenance

#### Panoramic sunroof maintenance

1. Wipe any dust or sand from the sunroof outer sealing strip with a wet cloth and do not scratch it, for that degrades its sealing performance.
2. Wipe any dust or sand on the injection molding edge of the front glass with a wet cloth and do not scratch the sealing strip, for that degrades the sealing performance;

3. Clean the front end of the rear glass frequently (after the front glass is fully opened) to remove dust, sand, leaves and other debris to prevent drain holes from blockage;
4. Clean the guide rails on both sides and the front flume frequently to prevent dust, sand, leaves and other debris to prevent drain holes from blockage;
5. When washing the vehicle, avoid aiming any high-pressure water guns directly at the sealing strip. This not only easily deforms or damages the sealing strip, but also easily causes water seeping into the vehicle;
6. In winter, if the frozen sunroof is opened, the sealing strip or other parts may be damaged. The vehicle should first be preheated, and the HVAC system should be turned on to speed up the melting of snow and ice. Open the sunroof only after the vehicle is warmer. To avoid the sunroof from freezing again, dry the residual water on the sunroof.
7. Do not open the sunroof fully on extremely bumpy roads. Vibration between the sunroof and the rail may deform related parts and even damage the motor. In addition, do not open the sunroof when it rains or the vehicle is being washed.

**Ordinary sunroof maintenance method**

1. Wipe any dust or sand from the sunroof outer sealing strip with a wet cloth and do not scratch it, for that degrades its sealing performance.
2. Wipe any dust or sand on roof sheet metal with a wet cloth and do not scratch the sealing strip, for that may wear sealing strip when the sunroof moving and degrade the sealing performance;
3. Clean the guide rails on both sides and the front flume frequently to prevent dust, sand, leaves and other debris to avoid water seeping into the vehicle;
4. When washing the vehicle, avoid aiming any high-pressure water guns directly at the sealing strip. This not only easily deforms or damages the sealing strip, but also easily causes water seeping into the vehicle;
5. In winter, if the frozen sunroof is opened, the sealing strip or other parts may be damaged. The vehicle should first be preheated, and the HVAC system should be turned on to speed up the melting of snow and ice. Open the sunroof only after the vehicle is warmer. To avoid the sunroof from freezing again, dry the residual water on the sunroof.
6. Do not open the sunroof fully on extremely bumpy roads. Vibration between the sunroof and the rail may deform related parts and even damage the motor. In addition, do not open the sunroof when it rains or the vehicle is being washed.

## Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than one month), the following preparations shall be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Shift the gear to P gear.
- Open the window on one side slightly (when parking indoors).

- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windscreen.
- To reduce sticking, spray silicone lubricant on the sealing parts of all doors and the boot lid, and apply vehicle body wax on the paint surface where the sealing strips of doors and boot lid contact.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material", such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.

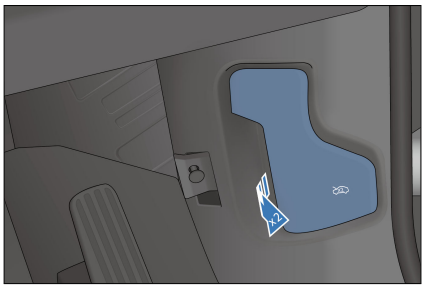
**REMINDER**

- Before transportation or storage, it is recommended that SOC is kept over 50% to ensure the performance of the high-voltage battery and normal power supply of the 12V battery during transportation or storage.

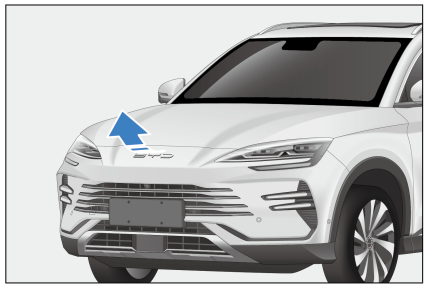
## Bonnet

### Opening the hood

1. Shift to P or N gear, and engage the EPB. Open the door, and pull up the hood opening handle on the right side of the lower body of the dashboard for 2 consecutive times to slightly open the hood.

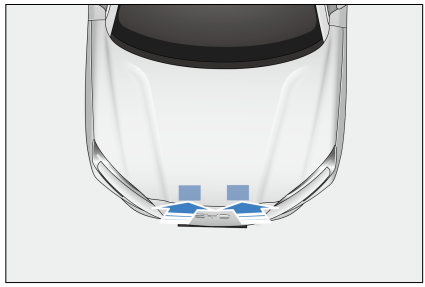


2. Open the hood and lift it up. The hood automatically rises to open.



### Closing the hood

1. Pull the hood downward to make its lock ring contact with the front compartment lock. Place both hands in the area shown in the figure in the front of the hood, and then press down hard to completely lock the hood.
2. After closing the bonnet, check whether the latch is securely locked.



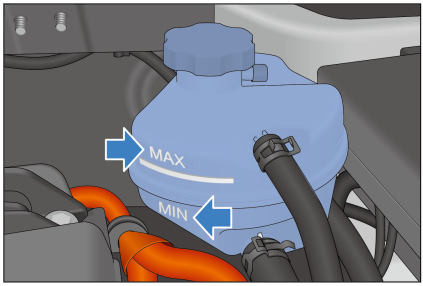
**REMINDER**

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly before driving. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.

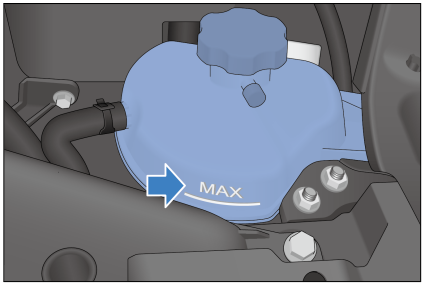
## Cooling System

Low-temperature expansion tank

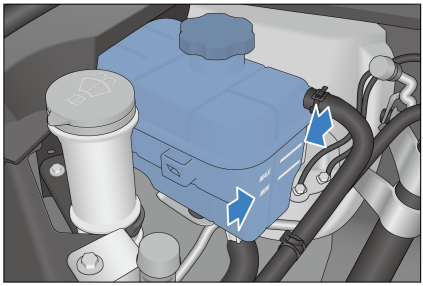
2WD




4WD




High-temperature expansion tank



- The fluid level meets the requirement when it is between the MAX (maximum fluid level) and MIN (minimum fluid level) marks of the expansion tank.
- Always use the coolant with specifications same as the original manufacturer's product. No admixture is required. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.

**REMINDER**

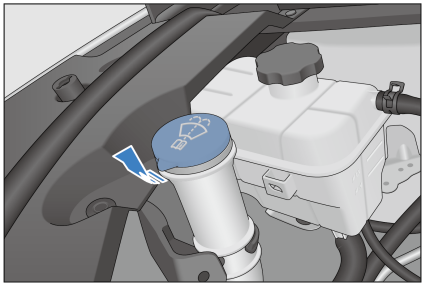
- Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for coolant addition.

**CAUTION**

- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system The additives may be incompatible with coolant or motor components.
- Before opening the coolant reservoir cover, make sure that the engine, motor, HV electronic control integrated module, coolant reservoir cover and radiator have cooled down. Otherwise, the coolant may eject and cause serious burns.
- Do not open the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box when filling the coolant.
- Fill the coolant with a special tool to prevent the coolant from flowing into the fuse box.

## Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windscreen washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windscreen washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.
- High quality windscreen washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



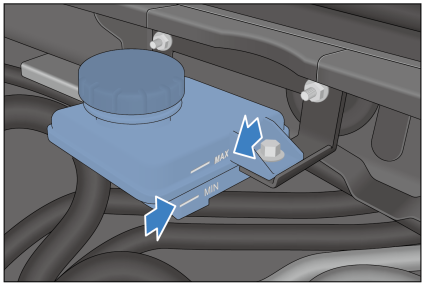
- When you add washer fluid to the fluid reservoir again, use a piece of clean cloth dipped with windscreen washer fluid to clean the windscreen wiper blade, which helps keep the blade edge in good condition.

**CAUTION**

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windscreen washing fluid.

## Braking System

The fluid level should be between MIN and MAX marks on the reservoir wall. If the fluid level is at or below the MIN (lower limit) mark, Check the brake system for leakage, and check the brake pad for wear.




**REMINDER**

- Check the fluid level in the reservoir at least once a month.
- Replace the brake fluid according to the driving time and mileage specified in the regular maintenance timetable.
- Please use HZY6/DOT4 brake fluid of the same model as that of BYD. Other models of brake fluid are not applicable to the braking system of this vehicle.

## Engine Oil

- Be sure to use engine oil with right specifications.
- When purchasing engine oil, check the oil specifications marked on the packaging container, which must conform to the using regulations for this vehicle.

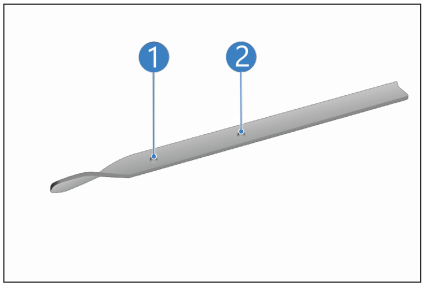
**Recommended engine oil**

- Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality purified engine oil should be used. It is recommended that you choose BYD original engine oil.
- Engine oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather conditions, and road conditions. The engine oil consumption rate of new engines may be higher.

**Check engine oil**

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine till it reaches the normal working temperature, and then shut down the engine.
2. After shutdown for 10min, remove the cover plate on the right side, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level

and oil condition, and check whether the oil level is between ① and ②. Add or replace oil as required.




3. Insert the oil dipstick back.

- When the low oil pressure warning light illuminates, please add oil in time.

**WARNING**

- Be careful not to splash oil on other vehicle components.
- The engine oil, engine components, and exhaust system are all with high temperatures, which may cause burns. Be careful and wear protective clothing when working in the front compartment.
- Long-time or frequent contact with used engine oil causes skin diseases. Use soapy water and clean water to wash the oil on the skin.

## A/C System

### A/C System

The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.

- Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects and dust accumulated on the front surface. These deposits hinder the airflow and reduce the cooling effect. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- In cold months, it is recommended that the A/C is turned on once a week for at least 10min to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

**CAUTION**

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

## Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windscreen surface. Use a customised ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windscreen surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windscreen surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects,

or foreign bodies on the windscreen surface.

- Do not wax the windscreen when washing the vehicle and maintaining the body paint, as the wax layer reflects light in poor light, consequently affecting the sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windscreen wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windscreen.
- Do not wash the wiper blade directly with a water gun to prevent damage to the wiper blade due to excessive water pressure.

**Maintenance Rules**

- Clean windscreen and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Even if there is no rain, it is recommended to wipe regularly (once every day or once every two days).
- Keep the windscreen fully wet when wiping with wiper blades (when it is not raining, the washer fluid must be sprayed on the windscreen in advance).
- Clean the windscreen with a special windscreen washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windscreen with a rag.
- Maintain the windscreen in time in case of scratches by gravel knocking (it is recommended to use resin products for the windscreen repair, and replace the windscreen in case of many or excessive scratches).
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- Lift the wiper arms up prior to cleaning the windscreen.

## Tyres Maintenance

- For safe driving, tyres must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tyre pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tyre pressure, damage to and wear of tyres, and the operating method for tyre transposition.

**WARNING**

- Using tyres with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

**Tyre Inflation**

- Keep tyres properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Driving with underinflated tyres leads to uneven tyre wear, affect maneuverability and power consumption, and even may cause air leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tyres reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tyre bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tyres, affecting tyre service life.
- The vehicle is equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring device. In a cold state, you decide whether to inflate the

tyres according to the tyre pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.

- Tyre pressure should be measured while tyres are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you have to drive before measuring the tyre pressures, as long as the driving distance does not exceed 1.6 km (1mile), the tyres can still be considered to be in a cold state.
- If the tyre pressures are checked when the tyres are hot (after several kilometers of driving), the pressure readings are 30~40 kPa (0.3~0.4 kgf/cm$^2$) higher than those in the cold state. This is normal. Do not deflate the tyres to reach the tyre pressure readings specified for the cold state, otherwise, the tyre pressures are insufficient.

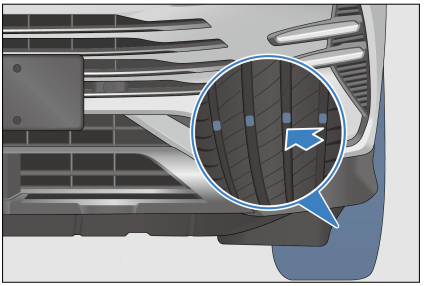
**REMINDER**

- The recommended cold tyre pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.

- Tubeless tyres can self-seal punctures. However, as leakage is usually very slow, the leaks should be carefully identified as soon as the tyre begins to depressurize.

**Checks**

- Whenever checking tyre inflation, check tyres for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tyre if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tyres should be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - Replace the tyre if there are cracks on its side, or if its fabric or cord can be seen.



- Replace tyres with excessive tread wear.
- Wear marks are cast inside tyre treads. When the tread is worn at this point, a band mark is shown across the tread, indicating the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm (0.06in). The adhesion of tyres worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- When the tread is worn to the point where the wear mark is exposed, there is serious performance loss, and the tyres must be replaced.

**Maintenance**

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tyre wear is found, drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check wheel alignment.
- The vehicle has been balanced in the factory, but tyres need to be re-balanced after driving for a period of time.
- If you feel continuous vibration when driving at a high speed (80 km/h 50mph) but not at a low speed, it is recommended to drive your vehicle

to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for a tyre inspection.

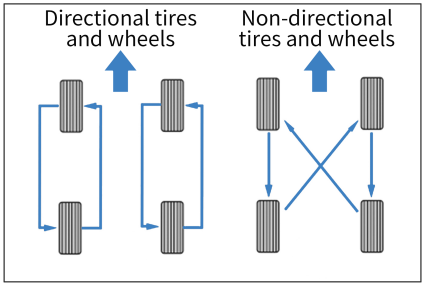
- Be sure to balance the tyre again after a tyre is repaired.
- After installing a new tyre or replacing a new wheel, always perform tyre balancing.

**CAUTION**

- Improper wheel balancers will get stuck, become loose and fall off. While driving, this will damage the car or surrounding objects.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

### Tyre Rotation

- In order to make tyres wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to rotate tyres regularly and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment as well.
- Do not rotate tyres when a spare tyre is used for the vehicle.




- When purchasing replacement tyres, you may find that some tyres are "directional," which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tyres are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped in tyre rotation. See the figure.

### Replacing Tyres and Wheels

- The original tyres of this vehicle are selected to maximize the performance of the vehicle, and can provide you with the best combination of maneuverability, riding comfort, and service life.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for replacement of original tyres.
- If radial tyres with different dimensions, load range, rated speed and maximum cold tyre pressure (marked on the side of the tyre) from that of the original tyres are used for replacement, or radial tyres and diagonal tyres are used at the same time, the braking capacity, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy of the vehicle are reduced.
- Unsuitable tyres affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- It is better to replace four tyres at the same time. If it is impossible or unnecessary, replace the pair of front tyres or rear tyres at the same time. Replacing only one tyre seriously affects the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS (Anti-lock brake system) works by comparing the speed of wheels. When replacing a tyre, use a tyre of the same size as the original tyre. The size and structure of the tyre can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorised dealer or

service providers. Please consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

**REMINDER**

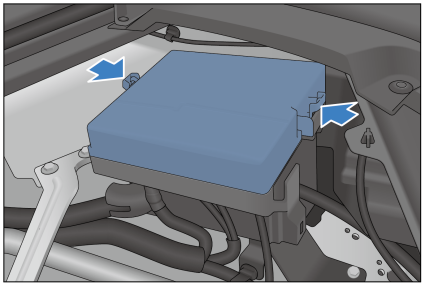
Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

- Do not mix radial tyres, bias belted tyres, or diagonal ply tyres on the vehicle.
- Do not use tyres with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

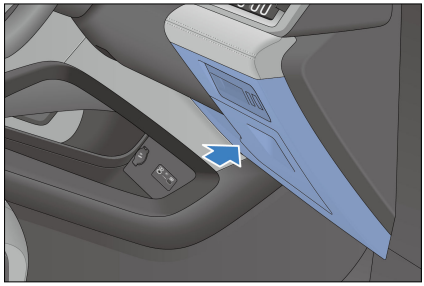
## Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading. These fuses are installed in 4 fuse boxes respectively.

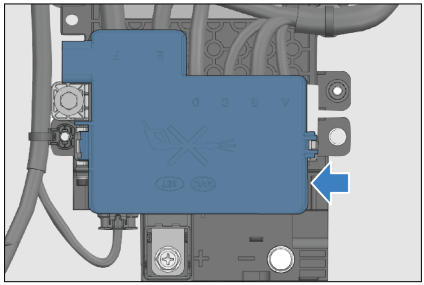
- The front compartment fuse box is located beside the left fender of front compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box, and turn over the upper cover to check the label of the front compartment fuse box.



- The dashboard fuse box is located in the lower shield of the dashboard.
  - Remove the right shield of the dashboard first and then the lower shield to check the dashboard fuse.



- The positive pole fuse box is located under the driver’ s seat.
  - Dismentlethe driver’ s seat and open the positive pole fuse box cover to check it.

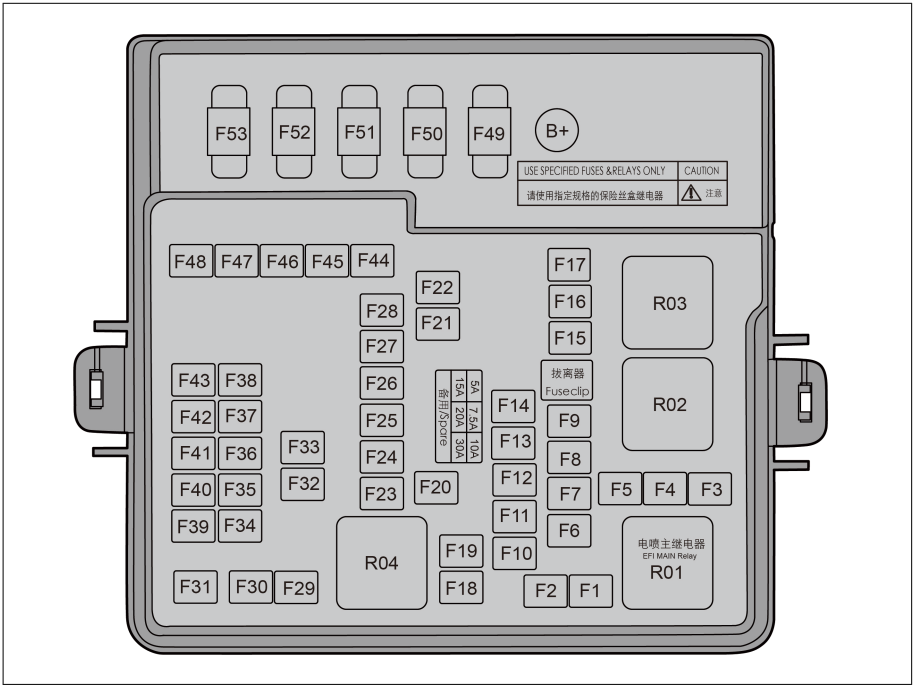


**REMINDER**

- Do not use any fuse with an amperage higher than the rated value, or any other object to replace fuses. Doing so can result in serious damage and potentially cause a fire.
- Do not open the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box when filling the coolant.
- Fill the coolant with a special tool to prevent the coolant from flowing into the fuse box.
- The jump start is only for starting the vehicle in a short time, so do not connect the overcurrent for a long time.

- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

**Under-Hood Fuse Box Nameplate**

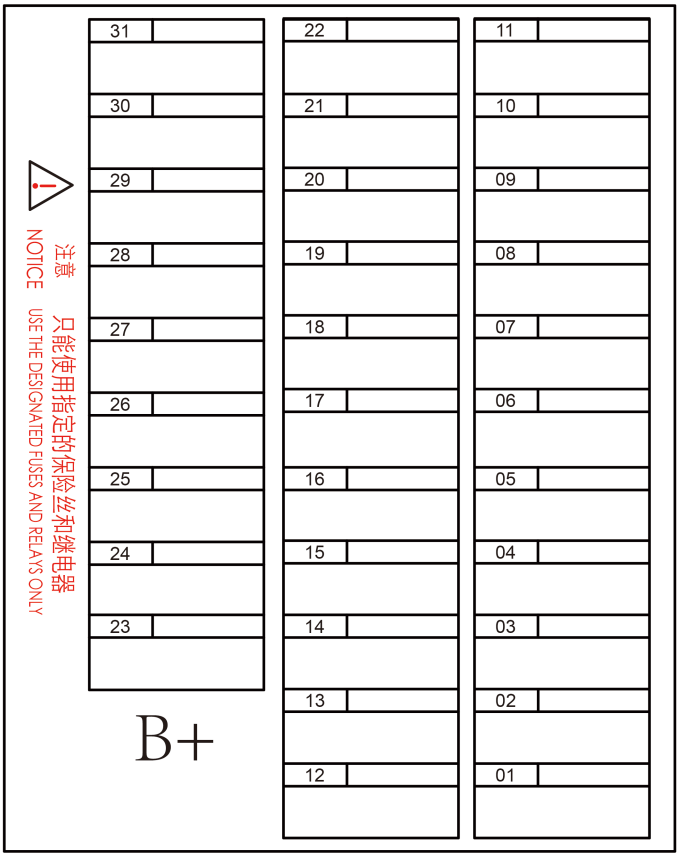



| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| F1 | 40 | Electronic fuel injection system |
| F2 | - | - |
| F3 | 10 | Fuel injector |
| F4 | 30 | Electronic fuel injection system ECU |
| F5 | 20 | Ignition coil |
| F6 | 15 | Ignition coil |
| F7 | 10 | Oxygen sensor |

| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| F8 | - | - |
| F9 | 5 | Engine ECU |
| F10 | 15 | Left combination headlight |
| F11 | 15 | Right combination headlight |
| F12 | 7.5 | Compressor |
| F13 | 10 | Motor controller |
| F14 | 10 | Rear motor controller |
| F15 | 5 | Vehicle control unit |
| F16 | 40 | Constant power |
| F17 | - | - |
| F18 | - | - |
| F19 | - | - |
| F20 | - | - |
| F21 | 30 | Front wiper |
| F22 | 30 | Rear defroster |
| F23 | 10 | Vehicle control unit |
| F24 | 10 | Electrically controlled cooling water pump |
| F25 | 10 | Battery manager |
| F26 | 10 | USB |
| F27 | 15 | Auxiliary power |
| F28 | - | - |
| F29 | - | - |
| F30 | 60 | ESC |
| F31 | 25 | Low-temperature cooling water pump |
| F32 | - | - |
| F33 | 5 | Battery manager |

| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| F34 | 15 | Steering wheel heater |
| F35 | 5 | Rear body control module |
| F36 | 7.5 | Engine ECU |
| F37 | 7.5 | ETC |
| F38 | 10 | SRS |
| F39 | 5 | ADAS |
| F40 | - | - |
| F41 | 5 | EPS |
| F42 | 5 | ESC |
| F43 | - | - |
| F44 | 60 | ESC |
| F45 | 40(2WD)<br>-(4WD) | Blower (2WD)<br>-(4WD) |
| F46 | - | - |
| F47 | - | - |
| F48 | 10 | Rear wiper |
| F49 | - | - |
| F50 | 70(2WD)<br>-(4WD) | C-EPS(2WD)<br>-(4WD) |
| F51 | 80(2WD)<br>60(4WD) | Stepless fan (2WD)<br>Blower (4WD) |
| F52 | - | - |
| F53 | 60 | Engine water pump |

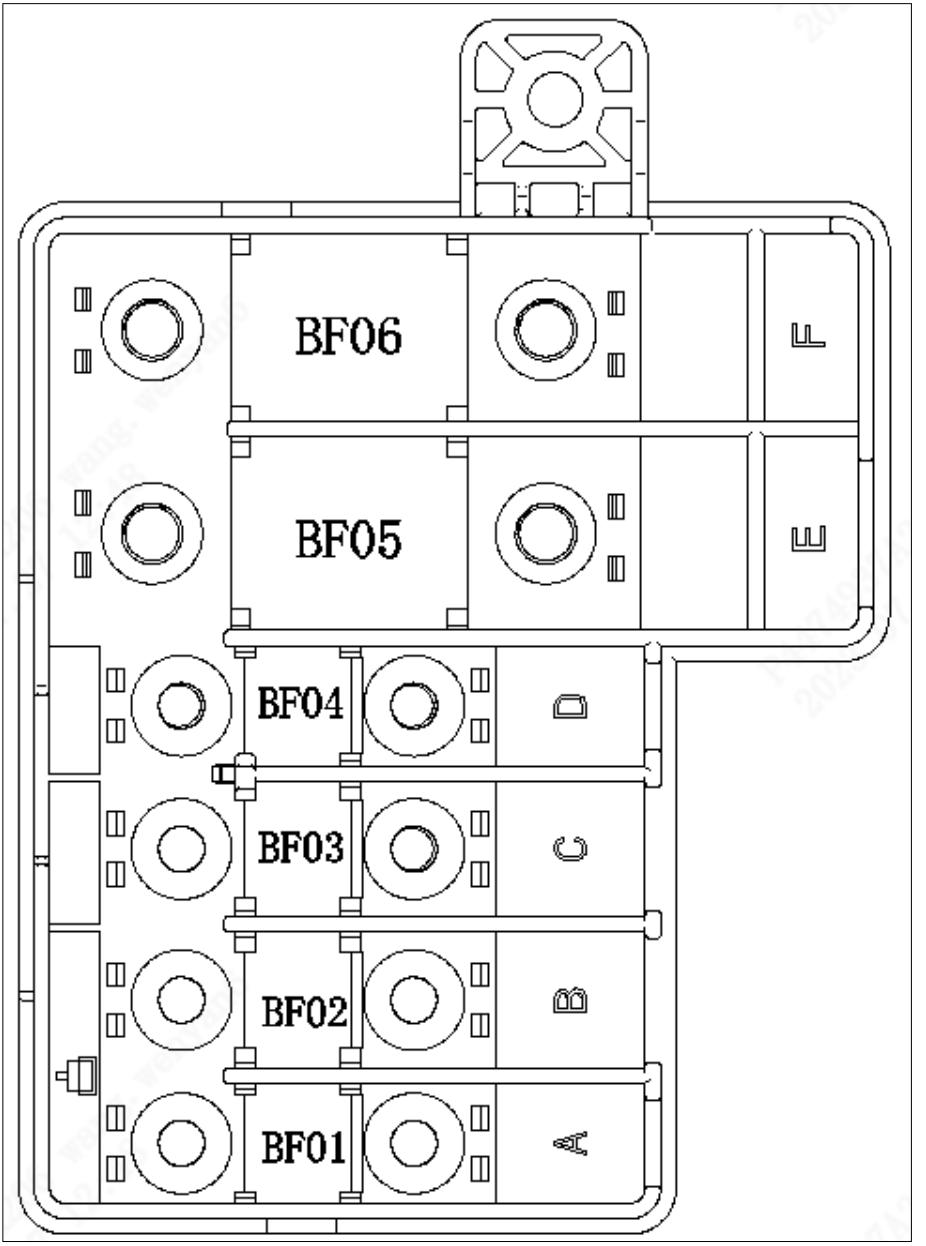
**Nameplate of Dashboard Fuse Box**




| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 01 | 30 | Rear body control module |
| 02 | 30 | Constant power |
| 03 | 10 | Alcohol interlock |
| 04 | 10 | Diagnosis port |
| 05 | 10 | Wireless charger |
| 06 | 5 | Gearshift panel |

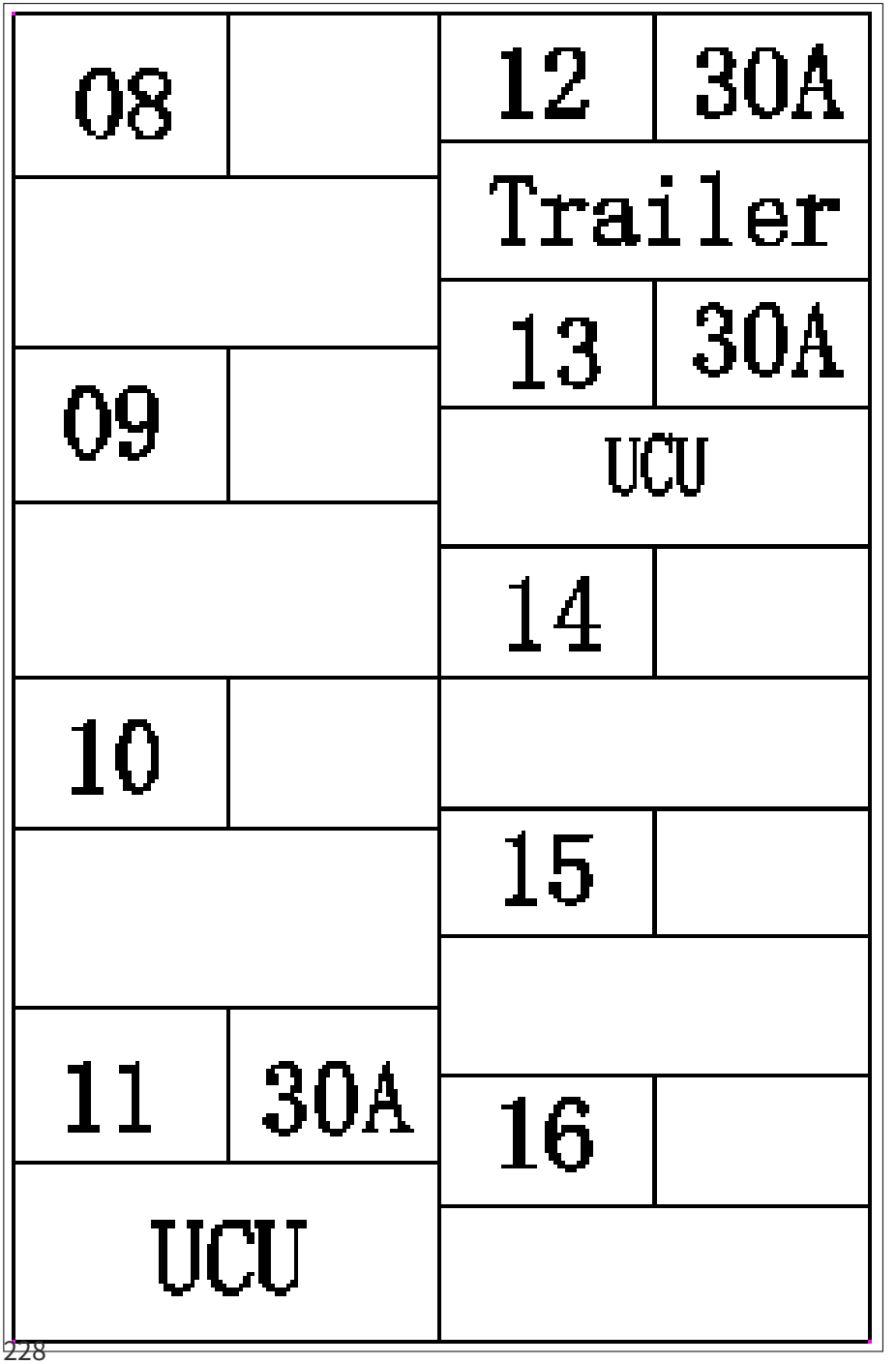
| No. | Ampere (A) | Protected Component or Circuit |
|---|---|---|
| 07 | 5 | Brake light switch |
| 08 | 20 | Infotainment system |
| 09 | 20 | External amplifier |
| 10 | 5 | ADAS |
| 11 | 10 | Combination switch |
| 12 | - | - |
| 13 | - | - |
| 14 | 20 | Low pressure fuel pump |
| 15 | 10 | Rear left combination light |
| 16 | 10 | Rear right combination light |
| 17 | 5 | On-board charger |
| 18 | 5 | Tank isolating valve |
| 19 | 30 | Rear body control module |
| 20 | 30 | Rear body control module |
| 21 | 30 | Left front power seat |
| 22 | 30 | Right front power seat |
| 23 | 15 | Rear USB |
| 24 | 20 | Trailer hitch |
| 25 | 7.5 | E-Call |
| 26 | - | - |
| 27 | - | - |
| 28 | - | - |
| 29 | - | - |
| 30 | - | - |
| 31 | - | - |

**Positive Pole Fuse Box Nameplate**



| No. | Ampere (A) | Descriptions |
|---|---|---|
| BF01 | -(2WD)<br>70(4WD) | -(2WD)<br>C-EPS(4WD) |
| BF02 | 200 | right body control module |
| BF03 | 60 | External fuse holder |
| BF04 | -(2WD)<br>125(4WD) | -(2WD)<br>Stepless fan (4WD) |
| BF05 | 200 | left body control module |
| BF06 | 350 | DC |

**External fuse holder**



| No. | Ampere (A) | Descriptions |
|---|---|---|
| 8 | - | - |
| 9 | - | - |
| 10 | - | - |
| 11 | 30 | UCU |
| 12 | 30 | Trailer |
| 13 | 30 | UCU |
| 14 | - | - |
| 15 | - | - |
| 16 | - | - |

# 07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....232

# When Faults Occur

## If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

**REMINDER**

- If the vehicle breaks down and an emergency stop is needed, promptly put on the reflective vest.

If the electronic smart key indicator does not flash, and the vehicle cannot be started with the start function, the battery may be exhausted. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery replacement as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no-power mode.

**CAUTION**

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Keep the key away from magnetic fields.
- If the vehicle is not to be used after the vehicle enters the anti-theft state with doors locked, please keep the key far away from the vehicle to avoid 12V battery consumption resulting from automatic key locating function.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Depress the brake pedal and meanwhile press the START/ STOP button, and the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster goes on, with a beep from the instrument cluster buzzer.
3. Within 30s after a beep from the instrument cluster buzzer, place the intelligent key close to the no-power mark of the auxiliary dashboard (as the figure shows). Then, the intelligent key warning light goes out and the vehicle is started within 5s.




## If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on

**If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on**

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct starting procedure (refer to Starting the Vehicle in the chapter of USING AND DRIVING) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. At the same time, check whether the vehicle can be started with the spare key. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. In this case, have the key checked by a BYD authorized service provider. If all keys cannot be used, the key or smart key system may fail. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**If the motor drives the engine to rotate at normal speed but the engine cannot run:**

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the engine may flood due to repeated

starts. In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

- When the OK indicator stays on, switch to ECO mode, shut down the engine, and then shift to the N gear.
- Press the P button. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning function.

3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

## Engine Flameout During Driving

- Slowly reduce the speed and keep driving in a straight line. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Trying again in HEV mode in P gear in situ on the throttle to generate power.
- Check the SOC value and check the dashboard warning light. If the meter engine alarms,you need to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The engine starts and stops frequently due to the lack of fuel.
  - If there is little fuel in the fuel tank, it is normal to repeat the startup and shutdown cycle; if it is identified that there is little fuel in the fuel tank, the engine starts and shut down repeatedly, thus failing to start. If the fuel in the tank is used up before refueling, the engine frequently starts and stops for some time. However, after the fuel pipe is filled with fuel, the engine enters the normal operation state.

## If the Engine is Overheated

If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates a high level and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light switch, pull the EPB switch, and press P gear button. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. If steam is coming out of the front compartment,coolant may be spraying out of the or leaking,turn off the vehicle and open the front compartment after the steam subsides. If no coolant is sprayed, keep the engine running and confirm that the cooling fan is working. If the fan is not working, stop the engine. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

**REMINDER**

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

**WARNING**

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a BYD authorized service provider for help.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to open the expansion tank cover after the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value.When the engine is running, add coolant into the expansion tank to the upper scale mark. Cover the expansion tank cover properly and start the engine for 2 to 3 cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value, check the level in the expansion tank again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized service provider for inspection immediately.

**WARNING**

- To avoid serious injury caused by high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the auxiliary tank cover when the engine and radiator are hot.

After parking, if the high-voltage battery SOC is low, do not use the A/C for a long time, because it consumes battery SOC. Low battery SOC triggers the engine to generate electricity, which may cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating.

## If the Vehicle Needs Towing

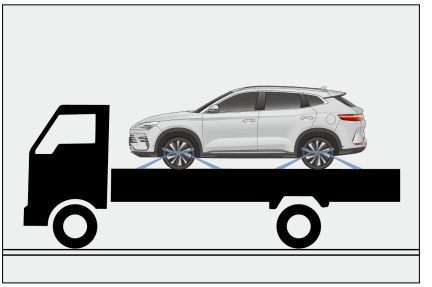
If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organisation you joined for roadside assistance.

**WARNING**

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Common towing methods include:

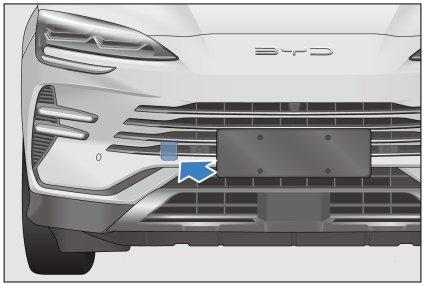
- Flatbed device
  - When the vehicle is faulty and needs towing, a flatbed trailer is the best choice. The front and rear wheels must be off the ground when the vehicle is being towed, otherwise high-voltage components will be damaged.



**Tow Eye**

The position to fasten the front towing hook is shown in the figure.

1. Open the cover with a straight screwdriver.
2. Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.

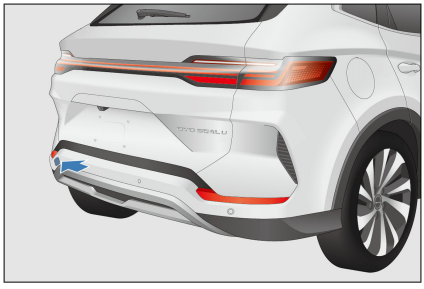


**REMINDER**

- Towing the vehicle with a tow eye is not recommended. You'd better contact a professional towing service or the organisation you joined for roadside assistance.
- Only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.
- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear with four wheels staying on the ground, to avoid damage to the vehicle.

**Rear Tow Eye**

- The installation point of vehicle rear towing hook is shown in the illustration. Press the rear towing hook plug cover edge on the rear bumper, open the rear cover, and install the traction hook that comes with the vehicle.



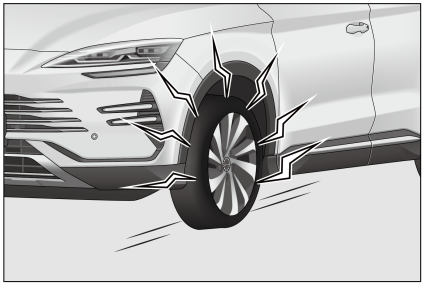
- If the vehicle is stuck and underpinning accident, please contact professional rescue or call the customer service hotline.
- In an emergency, when the vehicle is rescued or the towing hook is needed to rescue other trapped vehicles, please follow the following precautions to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - The driver of the towed vehicle must sit in the vehicle to control the vehicle, and the steering system and braking system of the vehicle must be in normal condition;
  - The vehicle being towed shall not carry persons except the driver, and shall not tow the trailer;
  - The towed vehicle is in "N" gear;
  - The width and weight of the tractor to be pulled shall not be greater than the width and weight of the vehicle;
  - The distance between the tractor and the tractor should be greater than 4m and less than 10m;
  - Both the tractor and the tractor to be pulled should turn on the emergency warning light;
  - The towing vehicle is in good condition, and the towing speed shall not exceed 5km/h (3mph);
  - When towing the vehicle, the tractor should first straighten the traction rope (bar) slowly, and then continue to increase the force to avoid accelerating the start of towing;
  - When towing the vehicle, it should be ensured that the surrounding area is spacious and unobstructed, and no person is near the towing device;
  - When the vehicle is untrapped, the direction of the vehicle is controlled to be consistent with the direction of

the towing force, and it is forbidden to drag from the side or vertical angle;

- Only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used and use it correctly.

## If a Tyre Goes Flat

- Keep straight and slow down the speed. Drive the vehicle off the busy road to a safe place. Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks. Park on solid, flat ground.
- Engage the EPB and press the "P" button.



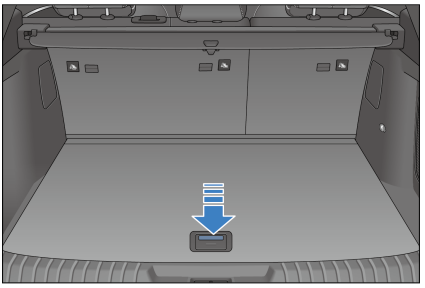
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tyre diagonally against the flat tyre.

**CAUTION**

- Do not continue driving with a flat tyre. Even a short distance of driving with flat tyre can cause irreparable damage.

**In-Vehicle Tools**

These tools are stored in a tool box under the boot cover flap.



These include: warning triangle, reflective vest, removal clamp for wheel nut cap, jack rocker wrench, towing hook, anti-theft nut sleeve and so on.

① Warning triangle

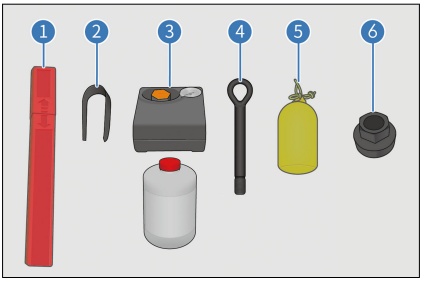
② Removal clamp for wheel nut cap

③ Tyre repair kit

④ Tow Eye

⑤ Reflective vest

⑥ Anti-theft nut sleeve




**Placing the warning triangle**

**REMINDER**

- When parking for repair, remember to place the red triangle side facing oncoming vehicles, 328 ft - 656 ft (100-200

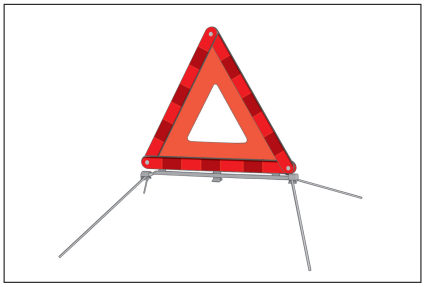
**REMINDER**

m) away from the vehicle. After the repair, recover the warning triangle for future use.

The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



**Using tyre repair kit**

- The tyre repair kit is used to seal small cuts, especially cuts in tread pattern. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service centre, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tyre is not deflated.

**WARNING**

- The tyre sealant can repair holes within 6 mm (0.2in) in diameter. If the diameter is larger than 6 mm (0.2in) or the hole is in another position on the tyre, do not use this product. Call for roadside assistance.

**WARNING**

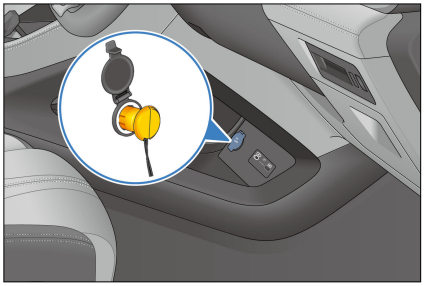
- Tyre sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep it away from children; and do not inhale its vapour.

**In case of contact with tyre sealant:**

- If tyre sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tyre sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

**Using the tyre repair kit**

- Please refer to the label on the inflator for the detailed usage of the tyre repair device.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to the power supply, please connect the power plug to the 12V outlet in the vehicle, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator switch.The tyre repair device is filled into the tyre together with air through the hose of the inflator.



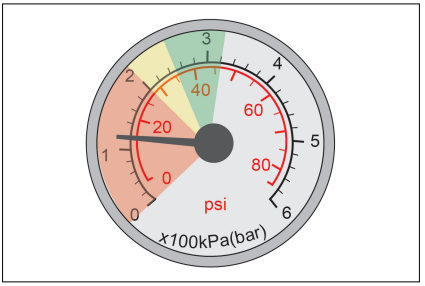
**REMINDER**

- When plugging the power plug into the backup power supply in the vehicle, make sure that the inflator pump is turned off.
- The inflator can only be turned on for up to 10 minutes.
- The working current of the backup power supply is less than 10A.
- During use, the voltage and power should not exceed the rated voltage of 12V and rated power of 120W marked on the backup power supply, otherwise, there are potential safety hazards.

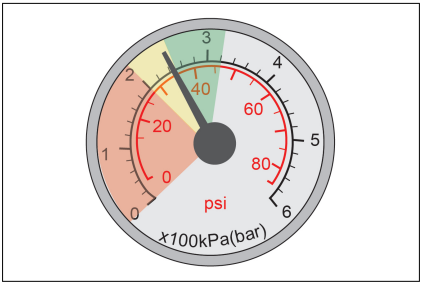
**WARNING**

- When starting the vehicle, the vehicle should be located outdoors or in a well-ventilated place (such as a building). Running the engine in a nonventilated or poorly ventilated place may cause suffocation.

- Observe the tyre pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 200 kPa (2.0 bar) within 10 minutes (red area shown in the figure), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.




- If the tyre pressure reaches between 200 and 320 kPa (between 2.0 and 3.2 bar) (green and yellow areas shown in the figure), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h (50mph) within 1 minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km (6miles), so that the tyre sealant is evenly distributed within the tyre.




- Stop to check the repaired tyre and the tyre pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure is greater than 250 kPa (2.5 bar), drive to the nearest service centre at a speed below 80 km/h (50mph).
  - If the tyre pressure is between 200 to 250 kPa (2.0 to 2.5 bar), inject the tyre sealant into the tyre and observe the tyre pressure readings on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 200 kPa (2.0 bar), contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

**REMINDER**

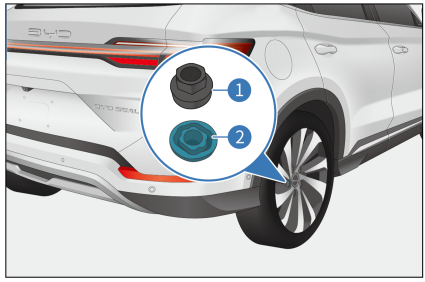
- Using tyre repair device on damaged tyres is only an emergency solution. Please change the tyres at a professional repair centre as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that the tyres contain tyre sealant.
- After using the tyre repair device, it is recommended that you purchase new tyre sealant and inflation hose at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Do not exceed 80km/h(50mph) and replace the flat tyre as soon as possible (within 200km/ 124miles). Do not continue driving in case of strong vibration, unstable driving performance or noise during driving.
- When the tyre sealant is about to expire (see the label on the canister for exact date), replace it with a new one.

**Anti-theft Nut Removal**

Each wheel is equipped with an anti-theft nut for wheel anti-theft. In-vehicle tool is necessary for nut disassembly.

Anti-theft nut removal method:

1. Take out the wheel nut cover removal clip from the vehicle toolbox, and open the protective decorative cover of the anti-theft nut on the wheel.
2. Take out the anti-theft nut sleeve ① from the vehicle toolbox, connect the anti-theft nut ②, and loosen it with a tool to take out the nut.



# 08 SPECIFICATIONS

Data Information..... 242
Tips.....247

# Data Information

## Vehicle Parameter

Dimensions:

| Item | Parameter | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U 2WD | SEAL U 4WD |
| Length (mm) | 4775 | 4775 |
| Width(mm)(excluding external mirrors) | 1890 | 1890 |
| Height (mm) | 1670 | 1670 |
| Wheelbase (mm) | 2765 | 2765 |
| Front track (mm) | 1630 | 1630 |
| Rear track (mm) | 1630 | 1630 |
| Front overhang (mm) | 1010 | 1010 |
| Rear overhang (mm) | 1000 | 1000 |
| Approach angle (°) | 19 | 19 |
| Departure angle (°) | 21 | 21 |

Vehicle mass:

| Item | Parameter | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U 2WD | SEAL U 4WD |
| Curb weight (kg) | 1940 | 2100 |
| Curb weight - front axle load (kg) | 1108 | 1152 |
| Curb weight - rear axle load (kg) | 832 | 948 |
| Max. allowable total mass (kg) | 2350 | 2510 |
| Front axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg) | 1220 | 1265 |
| Rear axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg) | 1130 | 1245 |
| Number of occupants (persons) | 5 | 5 |

Drive motor:

| Item | Parameter | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | 1.5L Configurations | 1.5T Configurations |
| Model | TZ220XYE | Front: TZ220XYS<br>Rear: BYD-2015TZ-XS-D |
| Type | Permanent magnet synchronous motor | Permanent magnet synchronous motor |
| Drive type | 2WD | AWD |
| Rated power/revolving speed/torque (kW/RPM/N · m) | 60/4775/120 | Front: 70/5570/120<br>Rear: 60/5172/112 |
| Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m) | 145/15000/300 | Front: 150/15000/300<br>Rear: 120/15000/250 |

Engine Data:

| Item | Parameter | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U 2WD | SEAL U 4WD |
| Engine Model | BYD472QA | BYD476ZQC |
| Engine Type | Inline four-cylinder | Inline four-cylinder |
| Displacement(mL) | 1.498 | 1.497 |
| Maximum net engine power/speed (kW/rpm) | 72/6000 | 96/5200 |
| Maximum net engine torque/speed (N·m/rpm) | 122/4000-4500 | 220/1500-4000 |
| Emission level | European emission standard | European emission standard |

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency:

| Item | Parameter | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U 2WD | SEAL U 4WD |
| Maximum design speed | ⩾170 | ⩾180 |
| EV/HEV Maximum gradeability | ⩾30/⩾30 | ⩾30/⩾30 |

Wheels and tyres:

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Tyre specification | 235/50R19 |
| Tyre pressure (kPa) | Front/Rear: 250/290(R19) |
| Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g) | ⩽10g·cm (single side dispaly of dynamic balancer) |

Wheel alignment parameters (under curb weight):

| Item | Parameter | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U 2WD | SEAL U 4WD |
| Front wheel camber (°) | -0.84°±0.75° | -0.85°±0.75° |
| Front wheel toe-in (°) | 0.14°±0.16° | 0.21°±0.16° |
| Kingpin inclination angle (°) | 11.1°±0.75° | 11.13°±0.75° |
| Kingpin caster angle (°) | 2.24°±0.75° | 2.28°±0.75° |
| Rear wheel camber (°) | -0.62°±0.75° | -0.56°±0.75° |
| Rear wheel toe-in (°) | 0.16°±0.16° | 0.18°±0.16° |

Braking system:

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Free stroke of brake pedal (mm) | 3.4-10.2 |
| Front brake disc thickness (mm) | 26-28 |
| Rear brake disc thickness (mm) | 9-11 |
| Thickness of front brake pad (mm) | 2-8 |
| Thickness of rear brake pad (mm) | 2-6.5 |

High-voltage battery:

| Item | Parameter | |
|---|---|---|
| Product model | SEAL U 2WD | SEAL U 4WD |
| Type | Lithium iron phosphate battery | Lithium iron phosphate battery |
| High-voltage battery rated capacity (AH) | 54/78.4 | 54 |

Seats:

| Item | Parameter |
|---|---|
| Seatback angle set for front seats | 25° |
| Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats | 220 mm forward and 20 mm backward of slide rail, the slide rail angle of 4.5 |
| Normal service conditions of front seatbacks | Design position of the backrest: 24.3° forward and 50.7 backward |
| Seatback angle set for rear seats | 28° |
| Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seats | Design position: 15° forward and 5.625° backward |
| Normal service conditions of seatbacks | 28° |

Oil parameters (2WD):

| Item | Model and specification | Filling Amount |
|---|---|---|
| BYD472QA engine oil | C5 0W-20 and above | Without filter change: 3.1 L;<br>With filter change: 3.3L |
| EHS special gear oil | EHSF-2LV | 2.5L for replacement(not replace filter assembly);<br>3.0L for replacement (replace filter assembly at the same time);<br>3.6L for overhaul |
| Brake fluid | DOT4/HZY6 | 1100ml±50ml |
| Coolant | Ethylene glycol type anti-rust antifreeze | High temperature: 7.5L±0.5L<br>Low temperature: 6.0L+0.5L |

Oil parameters (4WD):

| Item | Model and specification | Filling Amount |
|---|---|---|
| BYD476ZQC engine oil | C5 0W-20 and above | Without filter change: 3.7 L;<br>With filter change: 3.9L |
| EHS special gear oil | EHSF-2LV | 3.0L for replacement(not replace filter assembly); |

| Item | Model and specification | Filling Amount |
| --- | --- | --- |
| | | 3.5L for replacement (replace filter assembly at the same time);<br>4.1L for overhaul |
| Special gear oil for rear drive motor assembly | Castrol BOT384 | 0.8L |
| Brake fluid | DOT4/HZY6 | 1100ml±50ml |
| Coolant | Ethylene glycol type anti-rust antifreeze | High temperature: 7.5L±0.5L<br>Low temperature: 7.0L±0.5L |

Note:

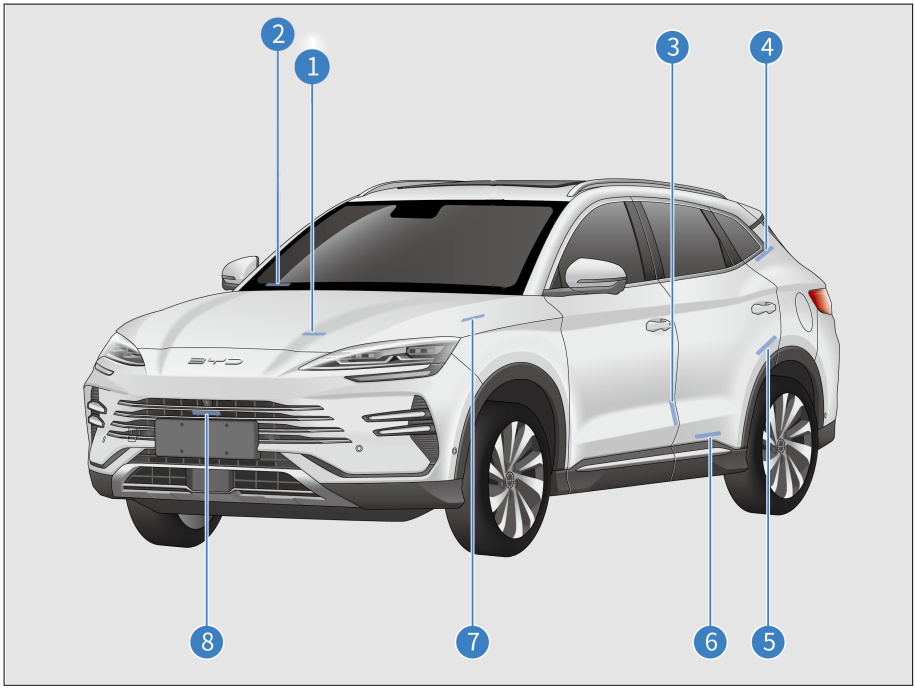
1. The actual fuel consumption is related to vehicle conditions, road conditions, driving habits, and other factors.

2. The vehicle body width does not include the side mirrors. The vehicle body height includes the roof rack and aerial base without the aerial.

# Tips

## Vehicle Identification

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)




① Attached to the gearbox

② Attached on the VIN slot on the upper cover of the front windscreen cross sill

③Attached to inner sheet metal surface of front left door;

④Attached to sheet metal surface of left frame of boot lid;

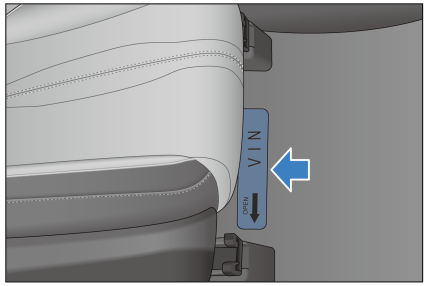
⑤Attached to sheet metal surface above rear left wheel;

⑥Attached to the sheet metal surface of the inner panel of the rear left door sill;

⑦Attached to inner sheet metal surface of the hood;

⑧Attached to the front anti-collision beam;

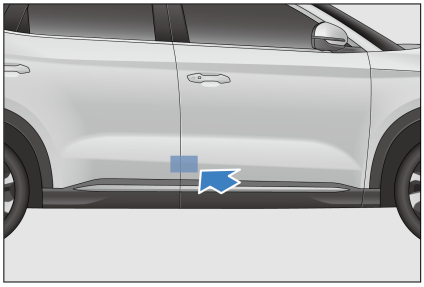
Engraved under the front passenger seat.



Note: The VIN can be read in the upper right corner of the page for the corresponding model after connecting the VDS. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.

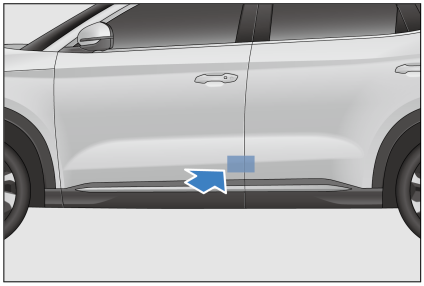
**Vehicle Nameplate**

It is pasted under the right B-pillar lock ring.



**Label for Information Pertaining to Agents in the EU***

The label for information pertaining to agents in the EU (for models in Ireland only) is attached to the side sheet metal surface at the lower end of the left B-pillar.



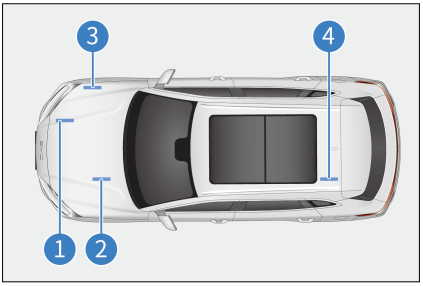
**Model and Serial Number of Drive Motor**

① The model and number of the engine are engraved on the engine block.

② The model and number of the front drive motor are engraved on the front drive motor housing.

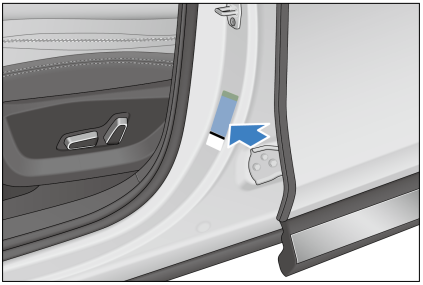
③ The model and number of the front drive motor are engraved on the inner panel of the hood.

④ The model and number of the rear drive motor* are engraved on the rear drive motor housing.

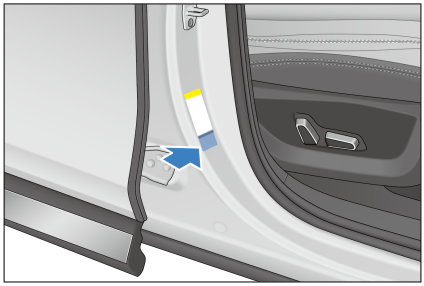



## Warning Labels

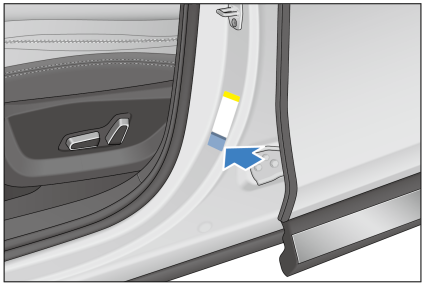
Side airbag warning labels are attached to the sheet metal surfaces under lock rings of left and right B-pillar door frames.



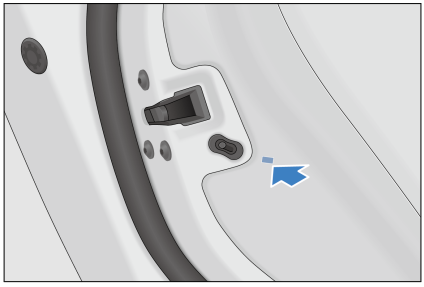
The tyre pressure label is attached to the sheet metal surface of the right B-pillar door frame.



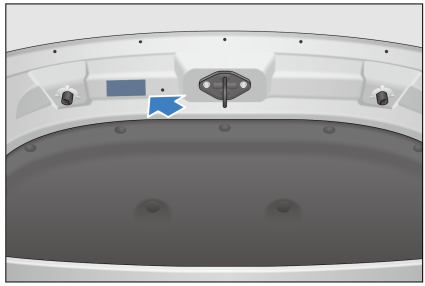
The battery position label is attached below the left B-pillar.



The child protection lock label is engraved on the rear door panel.



The A/C system label is attached to the right part of the inner bonnet surface.



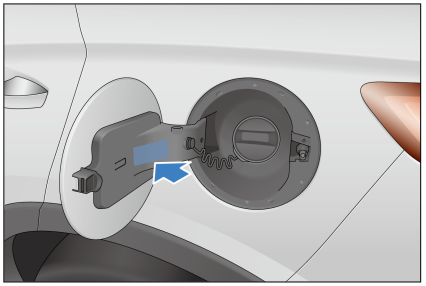
The British manufacturer label* is attached to the right part of the inner bonnet surface.



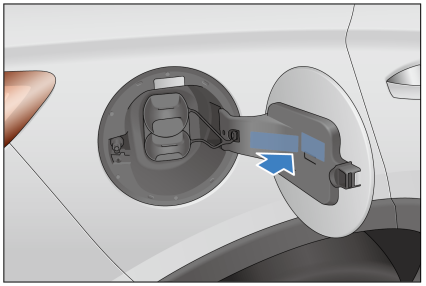
The British importer label* is attached to the left part of the inner bonnet surface.



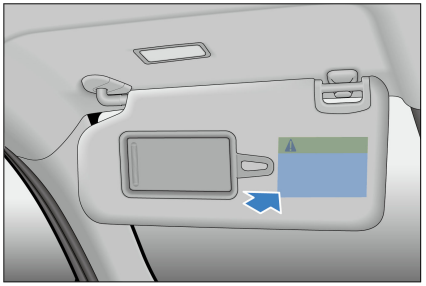
The unleaded petrol indication label is pasted on the inner side of the fuel filler hatch.



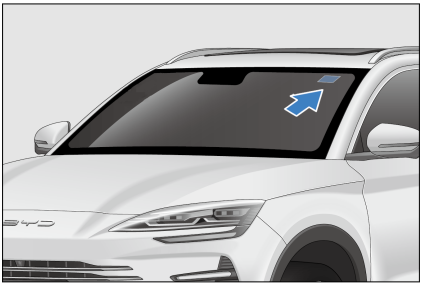
The charging port label and the charging port cover warning label are pasted on the inner side of the charging port cover.



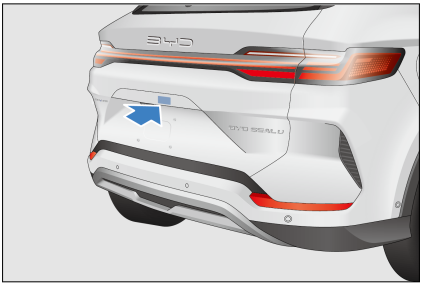
The airbag label is hot-stamped on the inner and outer sides of the left sun visor.



The anti-theft system label is attached to the corner of the front passenger side windscreen.

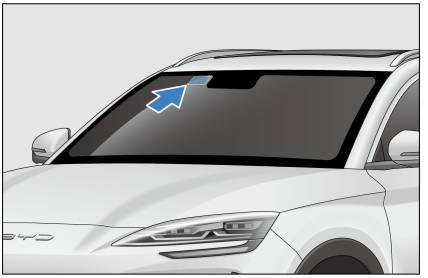


The boot lid opening label is attached to the outer sheet metal surface of the boot lid, directly above the boot lid button.



## Transponder Mounting Position

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper right of the front windscreen.



**CAUTION**

- Do not overlap with the glass frame or other objects when attaching the electronic logo.

# Declarations of Conformity

**Declarations of Conformity**

| Component Name | Frequency | Maximum Power |
|---|---|---|
| Tyre pressure monitoring transmitter module | 433.92MHz±44KHz | 87dBμV/m±2dB |
| | 433.92MHz±40KHz | 3m field -58 ~ -52 dBm |
| Interior detection aerial | 125±3KHZ | 10w |
| Electronic Smart Key | 433.92MHZ±60KHZ | 10dbm |
| High-frequency module | 433.92MHZ±60KHZ | 0.48W |
| Sensory mobile phone wireless charging module 1 | 127.7K±30K | 15W (single side charging) |
| | | 15W*2 (bilateral charging) |
| Sensory mobile phone wireless charging module 1 | 127.7K±30K | 50W |
| ECALL GPS aerial | 1559MHz~1605MHz | 0.05W |
| ECALL 4G aerial | 701MHz~960MHz | |
| | 1.71GHz~2.69GHz | |
| Exterior NFC device | 13.56MHz | 1W |
| Interior NFC device | 13.56MHz | 1.2W |
| On-board Bluetooth device | 2.402GHz~2.480GHz | 8dBm |
| Wi-Fi hotspot device | 2.402GHz~2.482GHz | 16dBm |
| | 5.17GHz~5.835GHz | |
| Network communication aerial (4G) | 701MHz~960MHz | / |
| | 1.71GHz~2.69GHz | |
| Network communication device (4G) | 700MHz~2600MHz | 23dBm |
| FM broadcasting aerial amplifier | 76MHz~108MHz | 0.24W |
| FM broadcasting device | | 0.8W |
| DAB aerial amplifier | 170MHz~240MHz | 0.24W |

| Component Name | Frequency | Maximum Power |
| --- | --- | --- |
| DAB box | | 1.5W |
| Four-in-one aerial (GPS, 4G, WiFi/BT) | 1559MHz~1605MHz<br>(GPS aerial) | 0.03W |
| | 701MHz~960MHz<br>1.71GHz~2.69GHz<br>(4G aerial) | |
| | 2.4 GHz~2.5 GHz<br>(WiFi/BT aerial) | |
| MmWave radars | 76GHz~77GHz | / |
| AM aerial amplifier | 522KHz~1800KHz | 0.6W |
| AM device | | 0.8W |

**Engine Emark**

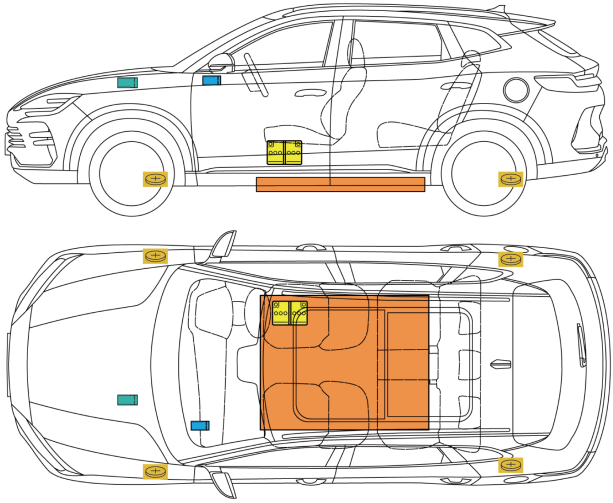



BYD472QA: E9 85R-006689

BYD476ZQC: E9 85R-006690

**Manufacturer and Importer Information**

1. Battery Types and Manufacturers



| Pictogram | Battery Name | Certification | Manufacturer Information | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | High-voltage battery | CE | Name | Shown in another Battery Parameters Document. |
| | | | Trade mark | |
| | | | Postal address | |
| |  | The High-voltage battery should be collected separately. | | |
|  | Low-voltage battery | CE | Name | Qinghai FinDreams Battery Co., Ltd. |
| | | | Trade mark | BYD |
| | | | Postal address | No.222 Jinchuan Road, Chengzhong District, Xining City, Qinghai Province, China |
| |  | The Low-voltage battery should be collected separately. | | |
|  | E-Call Spare battery | CE | Name | Jiangxi BetterPower New Energy Co., Ltd. |
| | | | Trade mark | BPI |
| | | | Postal address | No.999 Chunshun Road, Yichun Economic and Technological Development Zone, Jiangxi Province, P.R.China |
| |  | The E-Call spare battery should be collected separately. | | |

# Battery Parameters of Electrochemical Performance and Durability

1. Manufacturer Information

| Vehicle Configuration | Boost (80KM FWD) | Design (70KM AWD) | Comfort (125KM FWD) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Battery model | VD6 | VE4 | VF4 |
| Manufacturer | FinDreams Battery Zhengzhou Co., Ltd. | | Xiangyang FinDreams Battery Co., Ltd. |
| Trade mark | FinDreams | | FinDreams |
| Postal address | No.211, Zhiyang Road, Airport Economic Zone, Zhengzhou City, Henan Province, China | | No.1 Industrial Avenue, Shenzhen Industrial Pank, Xiangyang High-tech Zone, Xiangyang City, Hubei Province, China |
| Web or Email | https://www.fdbatt.com | | https://www.fdbatt.com |

2. Performance and Durability Information

| Trim Level | Boost (80KM FWD) | Design (70KM AWD) | Comfort (125KM FWD) |
|---|---|---|---|
| Battery model | VD6 | VE4 | VF4 |
| Rated capacity (in Ah) | 54Ah (RT, 1C+0.2C, charge; 1C, discharge; BOL) | | 78.4Ah (1C+0.2C, charge; 1C, Discharge; BOL) |
| Capacity fade (in %) | 30% (RT, 1C, after 3000cycle) | | 30% (RT, 1C, after 2500cycle) |
| Power (in W) (20%SOC) | Discharge at RT: $85.3*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $84.6*10^3$W (10s) | | Discharge at RT: $89*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $94*10^3$W (10s) |
| Power (in W) (80%SOC) | Discharge at RT: $94.7*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $53.5*10^3$W (10s) | Discharge at RT: $145.2*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $53.5*10^3$W (10s) | Discharge at RT: $185*10^3$W (10s)<br>Charge at RT: $69*10^3$W (10s) |
| Power fade (in %) (20%SOC) | 10% (RT, 20%SOC, 10s, after 3000cycle) | | 10% (RT, 20%SOC, 10s, after 2500cycle) |
| Power fade (in %) (80%SOC) | 10% (RT, 80%SOC, 10s, after 3000cycle) | | 10% (RT, 80%SOC, 10s, after 2500cycle) |
| Internal resistance (in Ω) | 0.13-0.18Ω (RT, 60%SOC, 3C, 10s, BOL) | | 0.1-0.15Ω (RT, 60%SOC, 3C, 10s, BOL) |
| Internal resistance increase (in %) | 40% (RT, 60%SOC, 3C, 10s, after 3000cycle) | | 40% (RT, 60%SOC, 3C, 10s, after 2500cycle) |
| Energy round trip efficiency | 92% (RT, 1C+0.2C charge, 1C discharge, BOL) | | 92% (RT, 1C+0.2C charge, 1C discharge, BOL) |
| Fade of energy round trip efficiency (in %) | 1% (RT, 1C+0.2C charge, 1C discharge, after 3000cycle) | | 1% (RT, 1C+0.2C charge, 1C discharge, after 2500cycle) |
| The expected life-time of the battery under the reference conditions for which it has been designed, in terms of cycles, except for non- cycle applications, and calendar years | 8y 3000cycle (70%SOH) | | 8y 2500cycle (70%SOH) |

Additional information:

Signature:

place and date : Shanghai 2024/7/12

## Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power..... 196

## A

A/C ON/OFF..... 186
A/C Operation Interface..... 187
Account Registration..... 185
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 160
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)..... 138
Adjusting Front Seats..... 76
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually..... 79
Air Purification System..... 192
Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions..... 19
Anti-theft Alarm system..... 41
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 208

## B

Bill Box..... 194
Blind Spot Assist System..... 154
Bonnet..... 213
Boot Cover Board..... 199
Brake fluid..... 215
Break-in Period..... 114

## C

Cargo Cover..... 197
Carrying Luggage..... 125
Centre Console Cubby..... 194
Charge Port Anti-theft Lock..... 105
Charging..... 99
Charging Precautions..... 97
Charging Safety Warnings..... 96
Child Presence Detection (CPD)... 159
Child Protection Lock..... 74
Child Seat Mounting..... 24
Cooling System..... 213

## D

Data Collection and Processing..... 42
Discharging Device..... 108
Door Bins..... 193
Driver and Front Passenger Airbags ..... 18
Driver Attention Warning system. 158
Driver's Door Switches..... 83
Driving..... 129
Driving Safety Systems..... 173

## E

E-Call Switches..... 92
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)..... 152
Engine Flameout During Driving.. 233
Engine Oil..... 215
Engine Overheated..... 233
Exterior Cleaning..... 207

## F

Fire Prevention..... 127
Folding Rear Seats..... 77
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) & Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB).... 148
Front seat cup holder..... 194
Front side airbags..... 18
Fuel..... 122
Function Definition..... 188
Fuses..... 220

## G

Gearshift control panel..... 131
Glasses Case..... 195
Glove Box..... 193

## H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 86
Headlight adjustment switch..... 86
High Beam Assist (HMA)*..... 149
High-Voltage Battery..... 110

## I

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted 232
If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on ..... 232
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 234
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 25
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) System..... 143
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) System..... 157
Interior Cleaning..... 208
Interior Light Switch..... 91
Interior Motion Sensor System.... 170
Interior Rearview Mirror..... 176
Introduction to Airbags..... 17

## K

Keys..... 62

## L

Lane Departure Assist (LDA) System ..... 150
Light Switches..... 79
Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 66
Low-voltage Battery (12V)..... 112

## M

Maintenance Cycle and Items..... 202

## P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 206
Panoramic View System*..... 160
Parking Assist System*..... 166
Power Side Mirrors..... 177
Predictive Emergency Braking (PEB)* ..... 145
Pretensioner and Force Limiter*.... 14

## R

Rear Seat Head Supports..... 78
Regular Maintenance..... 205
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 126

## S

Saving Fuel..... 124
SD Card Slot*..... 197
Seat Belt Overview..... 14
Seatback Pockets..... 195
Seats..... 75
Side Curtain Airbags..... 19
Smart Access and Start System..... 73
Smartphone Wireless Charging Position*..... 197
SOC Balance Function..... 106
Starting the Vehicle..... 129
Steering Wheel Switches..... 87
Sun Visor..... 195
Sunroof Maintenance..... 211

## T

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)..... 156
Transponder Mounting Position.. 250
Tyre Pressure Monitoring..... 170
Tyres..... 217

## U

USB Ports..... 196
Using Seat Belts..... 14

## V

Vanity Mirror..... 196
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 205
Vehicle Identification..... 247
Vehicle Parameter..... 242
Vehicle Storage..... 212
Vehicle Towing Function..... 114

## W

Wading into Water..... 126
Warning Labels..... 248
Washer..... 214
Wiper Blades..... 216
Wiper Switch..... 82
Wipers..... 178
Working mode selection of dual-mode system..... 35
Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System..... 30

# Abbreviation List

## Abbreviations

| 术语 | 全称 | 术语 | 全称 |
|---|---|---|---|
| ELR | 安全带紧急锁止 | ECU | 电子控制单元 |
| SPORT | 运动模式 | NORMAL | 普通模式 |
| V2L | 车辆对排插放电连接装置 | EPB | 电子驻车 |
| CDP | 减速度控制系统 | AVH | 自动驻车 |
| PCW | 预测性碰撞报警系统 | AEB | 自动紧急制动系统 |
| TPMS | 胎压监测系统 | VDC | 车身动态控制系统 |
| TCS | 牵引力控制系统 | HHC | 坡起辅助系统 |
| HDC | 陡坡缓降系统 | ABS | 防抱死制动系统 |
| VIN | 车辆识别代码 | | |

BUILD YOUR DREAMS

Edition date: 11.2023 EN_V0